

EXHIBIT 1

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES COR-)	
PORATION,)	
)	
Plaintiff,)	
)	
v.)	C.A. No. 1:16-cv-00122-LPS
)	
GROUPON, INC.)	
)	
Defendant.)	
)	

**DEFENDANT GROUPON, INC.’S NOTICE REGARDING
AUTHENTICITY OBJECTIONS TO TRIAL EXHIBIT LIST OF
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION**

Pursuant to the Court’s June 27, 2018 order granting the June 20, 2018 joint stipulation of the parties (D.I. 323), Defendant Groupon, Inc. (“Groupon”) hereby provides Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation (“IBM”) with notice of the authenticity objections to exhibits on IBM’s trial exhibit list, which Groupon intends to maintain. Groupon reserves the right to amend, modify, or supplement this notice, consistent with the Court’s orders.

Groupon will maintain authenticity objections to the following documents for the reasons set forth below:

- PX-0578-585, PX-0807-827, PX-0828-872, PX-0891-911: These exhibits include handwritten notes, drafts, printouts, overviews, specifications, and source code that purport to relate to systems related to the patents-in-suit; however, there is no evidence in the record authenticating these exhibits and IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the

source, date, author or circumstances of their creation.

- PX-0604, PX-0606, PX-0612, PX-0615, PX-0619, PX-0755, PX-0759, PX-1075, PX-1095: These exhibits appear to be webpages and third party documents for which IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the source or circumstances of their creation or publication.
- PX-0701-074, PX-0706: These exhibits appear to be portions of file histories for the asserted patents; however, they are not certified and therefore IBM has not established the source or authenticity of these documents. The certified file histories are already exhibits on IBM's exhibit list.
- PX-0122, PX-0123: These exhibits purport to be Akamai source code and related documentation; however, there is no evidence in the record authenticating these exhibits and IBM has not established, and the documents do not show, facts establishing the authenticity of these exhibits, including the source, date, author or circumstances of their creation.
- PX-1556-1563: These exhibits purport to be source code file comparisons that were not produced by any party or in response to any subpoena in this action. IBM has not established how these documents were created and by whom and under what circumstances.

//

//

Respectfully submitted,

ASHBY & GEDDES

Of counsel:

J. David Hadden
Saina S. Shamilov
Phillip J. Haack
Sapna Mehta
Jessica Kaempf
Athul Acharya
Jessica Benzler
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, CA 94041
Telephone: 650.988.8500
Facsimile: 650.938.5200

Dated: July 3, 2018

By: /s/ Saina S. Shamilov

Saina S. Shamilov
John G. Day (#2403)
Andrew C. Mayo (#5207)
500 Delaware Avenue, 8th Floor
P.O. Box 1150
Wilmington, DE 19899
(302) 654-1888
jday@ashby-geddes.com
amayo@ashby-geddes.com

Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I hereby certify that on this 3rd day of July 2018, a true and correct copy of the foregoing document was served on each party through their counsel of record via email.

John M. Desmarais
Karim Oussayef
Robert C. Harrits
Laurie N. Stempler
Jon T. Hohenthanner
DESMARAIS LLP
230 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10169
Tel: (212) 351-3400
IBMGrouponService@desmaraisllp.com
jdesmarais@desmaraisllp.com
koussayef@desmaraisllp.com
rharrits@desmaraisllp.com
lstempler@desmaraisllp.com
jhohenthanner@desmaraisllp.com

*Of Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation*

David E. Moore (#3983)
Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
Stephanie E. O'Byrne (#4446)
POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON
LLP
Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
1313 N. Market Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
Tel: (302) 984-6000
dmoore@potteranderson.com
bpalapura@potteranderson.com
*Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation.*

/s/ Jessica Benzler

Jessica Benzler
jbenzler@fenwick.com
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, California 94041
Telephone: (650) 988-8500
Facsimile: (650) 938-5200

Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.

EXHIBIT 2

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES COR-)
PORATION,)
)
Plaintiff,)
)
v.) C.A. No. 1:16-cv-00122-LPS
GROUPON, INC.)
)
Defendant.)
)

ELECTION OF PRIOR ART FOR INVALIDITY DEFENSES OF DEFENDANT GROUPON, INC.

Pursuant to the Court's June 15, 2018 order (D.I. 314), the Court's June 18, 2018 order granting the joint stipulation of the parties (D.I. 315), and the parties' June 20, 2018 joint stipulation (D.I. 323), Groupon hereby discloses the prior art per asserted patent that it may contend renders the asserted claims invalid at trial. Nothing herein limits, or intends to limit, the invalidity theories Groupon may advance at trial, evidence upon which Groupon may rely to establish the state of the art of the asserted patents or any authentication or background evidence.

I. U.S. PATENT NO. 5,796,967

	Prior Art	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
1	“Andrew: A Distributed Personal Computing Environment,” James H. Morris	DX-0355
2	Xerox Star	DX-0356, DX-0357
3	HyperCard	DX-0351, DX-0352, DX-0354, DX-0394, DX-0643

4	“Caching Hints in Distributed Systems,” Douglas B. Terry, Journal IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering, Vol. 13 (January 1987)	DX-0358
---	---	---------

II. U.S. PATENT NO. 7,072,849

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
5	“VIDEOTEX/TELETEXT Principles and Practices,” Antoine F. Alber (1985)	DX-0366
6	U.S. Patent No. 4,575,579 to Simon (Mar. 11, 1986)	DX-0365
7	“Design and Implementation of An Electronic Special Interest Magazine” Gitta B. Salomon (September 1986)	DX-0348
8	IBM’s Trintex System (1987)	DX-0158, DX-0359, DX-0360, DX-0361, DX-0362, DX-0363, DX-0364

III. U.S. PATENT NO. 5,961,601

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
9	“HTML & CGI UNLEASHED” and accompanying CD including source code, John December	DX-0058, DX-0167, DX-0373
10	“Spinning the Web: a guide to serving information on the World Wide Web,” Yuval Fisher (February 23, 1996)	DX-0374, DX-0442
11	U.S. Patent No. 6,016,484 to Williams (Jan. 18, 2000)	DX-0377
12	Amazon.com system	DX-0202, DX-0375, DX-0376, PX-1544 – PX-1563

IV. U.S. PATENT NO. 7,631,346

	Prior Art Reference	Trial Exhibit Number(s)
13	Liberty Alliance System Specifications	DX-0380, DX-0381, DX-0382, DX-0383, DX-0645, DX-0646, DX-0647
14	Japanese Patent Application Publication No. 2004-302907 to Sunada (Oct. 28, 2004)	DX-0378, DX-0525
15	U.S. Patent No. 7,680,819 to Mellmer (Mar. 16, 2010)	DX-0379
16	U.S. Patent No. 7,137,006 to Grandcolas (Nov. 14, 2006)	DX-0384

Respectfully submitted,

ASHBY & GEDDES

Of counsel:

J. David Hadden
Saina S. Shamilov
Phillip J. Haack
Sapna Mehta
Jessica Kaempf
Athul Acharya
Jessica Benzler
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, CA 94041
Telephone: 650.988.8500
Facsimile: 650.938.5200

By: /s/ Saina S. Shamilov

Saina S. Shamilov
John G. Day (#2403)
Andrew C. Mayo (#5207)
500 Delaware Avenue, 8th Floor
P.O. Box 1150
Wilmington, DE 19899
(302) 654-1888
jday@ashby-geddes.com
amayo@ashby-geddes.com

Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.

Dated: June 26, 2018

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I hereby certify that on this 26th day of June 2018, a true and correct copy of the foregoing document was served on each party through their counsel of record via email.

John M. Desmarais
Karim Oussayef
Robert C. Harrits
Laurie N. Stempler
Brian D. Matty
Michael J.X. Matulewicz-Crowley
DESMARAIS LLP
230 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10169
Tel: (212) 351-3400
IBMGrouponService@desmaraisllp.com
jdesmarais@desmaraisllp.com
koussayef@desmaraisllp.com
rharrits@desmaraisllp.com
lstempler@desmaraisllp.com
bmatty@desmaraisllp.com
mmatulewicz-crowley@dllp.com

*Of Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation*

David E. Moore (#3983)
Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
Stephanie E. O'Byrne (#4446)
POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON
LLP
Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
1313 N. Market Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
Tel: (302) 984-6000
dmoore@potteranderson.com
bpalapura@potteranderson.com
*Counsel for Plaintiff International Business
Machines Corporation.*

/s/ Jessica Benzler

Jessica Benzler
jbenzler@fenwick.com
FENWICK & WEST LLP
Silicon Valley Center
801 California Street
Mountain View, California 94041
Telephone: (650) 988-8500
Facsimile: (650) 938-5200

*Attorneys for Defendant
GROUPON, INC.*

EXHIBIT 3



Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview

Version: 1.2-errata-v1.0

Editors:

Thomas Wason, IEEE-ISTO

Contributors:

Scott Cantor, Internet2, The Ohio State University

Jeff Hodges, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

John Kemp, IEEE-ISTO

Peter Thompson, IEEE-ISTO

Abstract:

This is a non-normative document describing the basic structure and operation of the Liberty Alliance architecture. Examples are provided to illustrate the operation of systems using the architecture. It is intended that this document provide a general introduction to the Liberty ID-FF architecture.

Filename: draft-liberty-idff-arch-overview-1.2-errata-v1.0.pdf

Notice

This document has been prepared by Sponsors of the Liberty Alliance. Permission is hereby granted to use the document solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this document for other uses must contact the Liberty Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

Implementation of certain elements of this document may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The Sponsors of and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights. **This Specification is provided "AS IS", and no participant in the Liberty Alliance makes any warranty of any kind, express or implied, including any implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement of third party intellectual property rights, and fitness for a particular purpose.** Implementors of this Specification are advised to review the Liberty Alliance Project's website (<http://www.projectliberty.org/>) for information concerning any Necessary Claims Disclosure Notices that have been received by the Liberty Alliance Management Board.

Copyright © 2004-2005 ADAE; Adobe Systems; America Online, Inc.; American Express Company; Avatier Corporation; Axalto; Bank of America Corporation; BIPAC; Computer Associates International, Inc.; DataPower Technology, Inc.; Diversinet Corp.; Enosis Group LLC; Entrust, Inc.; Epok, Inc.; Ericsson; Fidelity Investments; Forum Systems, Inc.; France Telecom; Gamefederation; Gemplus; General Motors; Giesecke & Devrient GmbH; Hewlett-Packard Company; IBM Corporation; Intel Corporation; Intuit Inc.; Kantega; Kayak Interactive; MasterCard International; Mobile Telephone Networks (Pty) Ltd; NEC Corporation; Netegrity, Inc.; NeuStar, Inc.; Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation; Nokia Corporation; Novell, Inc.; NTT DoCoMo, Inc.; OpenNetwork; Oracle Corporation; Ping Identity Corporation; Royal Mail Group plc; RSA Security Inc.; SAP AG; Senforce; Sharp Laboratories of America; Sigaba; SmartTrust; Sony Corporation; Sun Microsystems, Inc.; Telefonica Moviles, S.A.; Trusted Network Technologies.; Trustgenix; UTI; VeriSign, Inc.; Vodafone Group Plc. All rights reserved.

Liberty Alliance Project
Licensing Administrator
c/o IEEE-ISTO
445 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA
info@projectliberty.org

31 **Contents**

32	1. Introduction	4
33	2. Liberty ID-FF User Experience Examples	7
34	3. Liberty Engineering Requirements Summary	16
35	4. Liberty Architecture	18
36	References	44

1. Introduction

The Internet is now a prime vehicle for business, community, and personal interactions. The notion of *identity* is the crucial component of this vehicle. Today, one's identity on the Internet is fragmented across various identity providers, employers, Internal portals, various communities, and business services. This fragmentation yields isolated, high-friction, one-to-one customer-to-business relationships and experiences.

Federated network identity is the key to reducing this friction and realizing new business taxonomies and opportunities, coupled with new economies of scale. In this new world of federated commerce, a user's online identity, personal profile, personalized online configurations, buying habits and history, and shopping preferences will be administered by the user and securely shared with the organizations of the user's choosing. A federated network identity model will ensure that critical private information is used by appropriate parties.

The path to realizing a rich, fertile federated identity infrastructure can be taken in phases. The natural first phase is the establishment of a standardized, multivendor, Web-based single sign-on with simple federated identities based on today's commonly deployed technologies. This document presents an overview of the *Liberty Identity Federation Framework (ID-FF)*, which offers a viable approach for implementing such a single sign-on with federated identities. This overview first summarizes federated network identity, describes two key Liberty ID-FF user experience scenarios, summarizes the ID-FF engineering requirements and security framework, and then provides a discussion of the Liberty ID-FF architecture.

1.1. About This Document

This document is *non-normative*. However, it provides implementers and deployers guidance in the form of policy/security and technical notes. Further details of the Liberty ID-FF architecture are given in several normative technical documents associated with this overview, specifically [LibertyAuthnContext], [LibertyBindProf], [LibertyImplGuide], and [LibertyProtSchema]. Note: The more global term *Principal* is used for *user* in Liberty's technical documents. Definitions for Liberty-specific terms can be found in the [LibertyGlossary]. Also, many abbreviations are used in this document without immediate definition because the authors believe these abbreviations are widely known, for example, HTTP and SSL. However, the definitions of these abbreviations can also be found in [LibertyGlossary]. Note: Phrases and numbers in brackets [] refer to other documents; details of these references can be found in References (at the end of this document). As this document is non-normative it does not use terminology "MUST", "MAY", "SHOULD" in a manner consistent with RFC-2119 (see [RFC2119]).

1.2. What is the Liberty Alliance?

The Liberty Alliance Project represents a broad spectrum of industries united to drive a new level of trust, commerce, and communications on the Internet.

1.2.1. The Liberty Vision

The members of the Liberty Alliance envision a networked world across which individuals and businesses can engage in virtually any transaction without compromising the privacy and security of vital identity information.

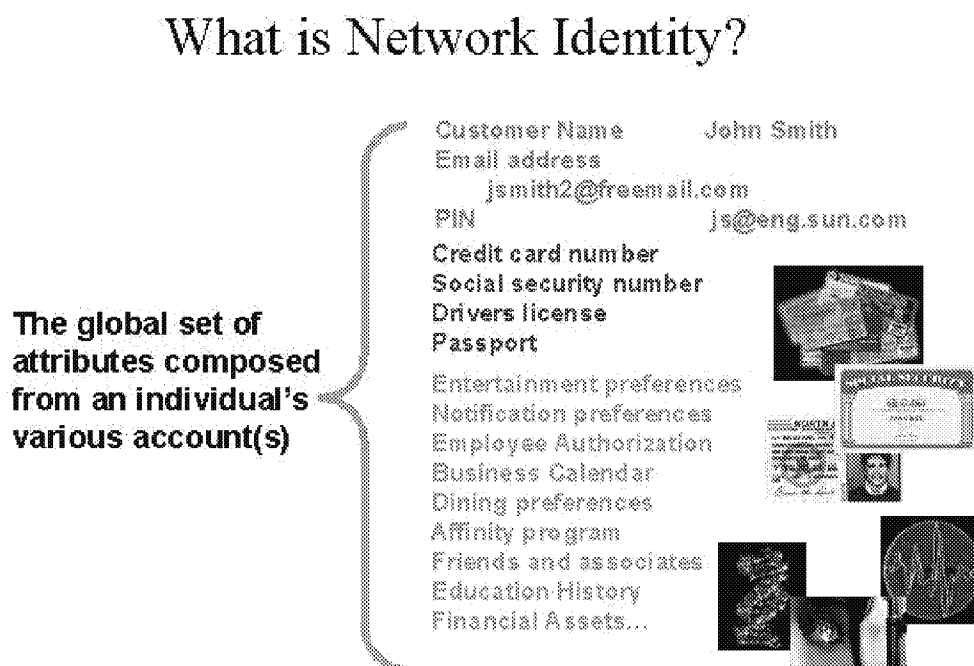
1.2.2. The Liberty Mission

To accomplish its vision, the Liberty Alliance will establish open technical specifications that support a broad range of network identity-based interactions and provide businesses with

- A basis for new revenue opportunities that economically leverage their relationships with consumers and business partners and
- A framework within which the businesses can provide consumers with choice, convenience, and control when using any device connected to the Internet.

78 **1.3. What is Network Identity?**

79 When users interact with services on the Internet, they often tailor the services in some way for their personal use.
 80 For example, a user may establish an account with a username and password and/or set some preferences for what
 81 information the user wants displayed and how the user wants it displayed. The network identity of each user is the
 82 overall global set of these attributes constituting the various accounts (see Figure 1).



83

84 **Figure 1. A network identity is the global set of attributes composed from a user's account(s).**

85 Today, users' accounts are scattered across isolated Internet sites. Thus the notion that a user could have a cohesive,
 86 tangible network identity is not realized.

87 **1.3.1. The Liberty Objectives**

88 The key objectives of the Liberty Alliance are to:

- 89 • Enable consumers to protect the privacy and security of their network identity information
- 90 • Enable businesses to maintain and manage their customer relationships without third-party participation
- 91 • Provide an open single sign-on standard that includes decentralized authentication and authorization from multiple
- 92 providers
- 93 • Create a network identity infrastructure that supports all current and emerging network access devices

94 These capabilities can be achieved when, first, businesses affiliate together into *circles of trust* based on Liberty-
 95 enabled technology and on operational agreements that define *trust relationships* between the businesses and, second,
 96 users federate the otherwise isolated accounts they have with these businesses (known as their *local identities*). In
 97 other words, a circle of trust is a federation of service providers and identity providers that have business relationships
 98 based on Liberty architecture and operational agreements and with whom users can transact business in a secure and
 99 apparently seamless environment. See Figure 2. Note: Operational agreement definitions are out of the scope of the
 100 Liberty Version 1.2 specifications.

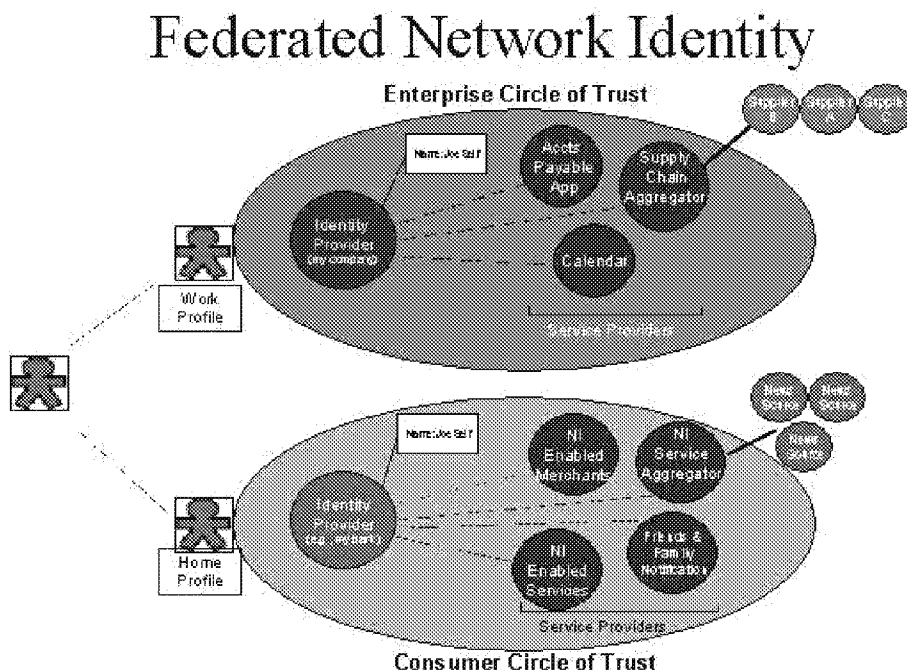


Figure 2. Federated network identity and circles of trust

103 From a Liberty perspective, the salient actors in Figure 2 are the user, service providers, and identity providers.

104 Service providers are organizations offering Web-based services to users. This broad category includes practically any
 105 organization on the Web today, for example, Internet portals, retailers, transportation providers, financial institutions,
 106 entertainment companies, not-for-profit organizations, governmental agencies, etc.

107 Identity providers are service providers offering business incentives so that other service providers affiliate with them.
 108 Establishing such relationships creates the circles of trust shown in Figure 2. For example, in the enterprise circle
 109 of trust, the identity provider is a company leveraging employee network identities across the enterprise. Another
 110 example is the consumer circle of trust, where the user's bank has established business relationships with various
 111 other service providers allowing the user to wield his/her bank-based network identity with them. Note: A single
 112 organization may be both an identity provider and a service provider, either generally or for a given interaction.

113 These scenarios are enabled by service providers and identity providers deploying Liberty-enabled products in their
 114 infrastructure, but do not require users to use anything other than today's common Web browser.

2. Liberty ID-FF User Experience Examples

This section provides two simple, plausible examples of the Liberty ID-FF user experience, from the perspective of the user, to set the overall context for delving into technical details of the Liberty architecture in Section 4. As such, actual technical details are hidden or simplified.

Note: the user experience examples presented in this section are non-normative and are presented for illustrative purposes only.

These user experience examples are based upon the following set of actors:

Joe Self	A user of Web-based online services.
Airline.inc	An airline maintaining an affinity group of partners. Airline.inc is an identity provider.
CarRental.inc	A car rental company that is a member of the airline's affinity group. CarRental.inc is a service provider.

The Liberty ID-FF user experience has two main facets:

- Identity federation
- Single sign-on

Identity federation is based upon linking users' otherwise distinct service provider and identity provider accounts. This account linkage, or *identity federation*, in turn underlies and enables the other facets of the Liberty ID-FF user experience.

OVERALL POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Identity federation must be predicated upon prior agreement between the identity and service providers. It should be additionally predicated upon providing notice to the user, obtaining the user's consent, and recording both the notice and consent in an auditable fashion. Providing an auditable record of notice and consent will enable both users and providers to confirm that notice and consent were provided and to document that the consent is bound to a particular interaction. Such documentation will increase consumer trust in online services. Implementors and deployers of Liberty-enabled technology should ensure that notice and user consent are auditably recorded in Liberty-enabled interactions with users, as appropriate.

Single sign-on enables users to sign on once with a member of a federated group of identity and service providers (or, from a provider's point of view, with a member of a circle of trust) and subsequently use various Websites among the group without signing on again.

2.1. Example of Identity Federation User Experience

The identity federation facet of the Liberty ID-FF user experience typically begins when Joe Self logs in to Airline.inc's Website, a Liberty-enabled identity provider, as illustrated in Figure 3.

Note:

Even though Joe Self is unaware of it, behind the scenes the identity provider is using Joe Self's credentials—his username and password in this case—to authenticate his identity. If successful, Joe Self is considered *authenticated*.

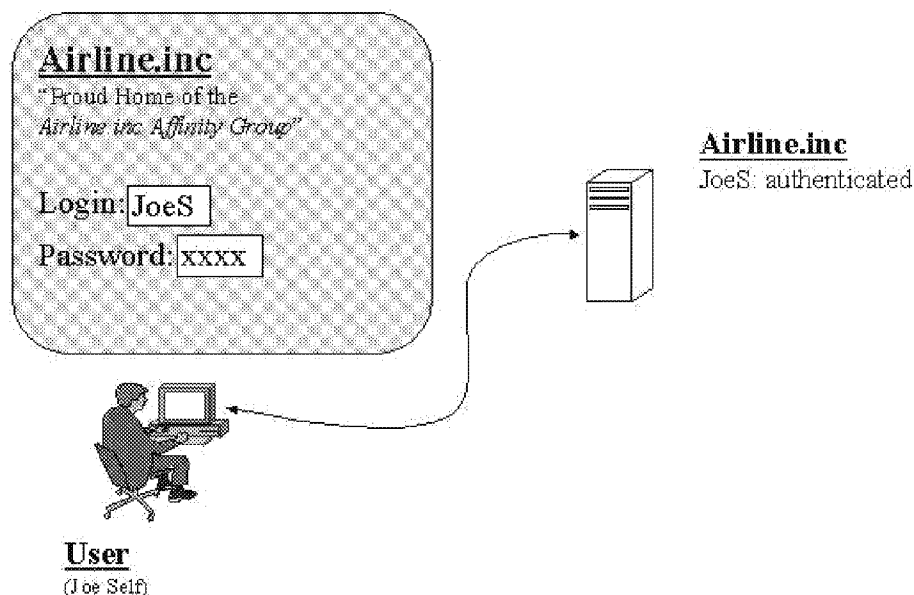


Figure 3. User logs in at a Liberty-enabled Website.

Airline.inc. (as would any other identity provider that has created a circle of trust among its affinity group) will notify its eligible users of the possibility of federating their local identities among the members of the affinity group and will solicit permission to facilitate the introduction of the user to the members of the affinity group. See Figure 4.

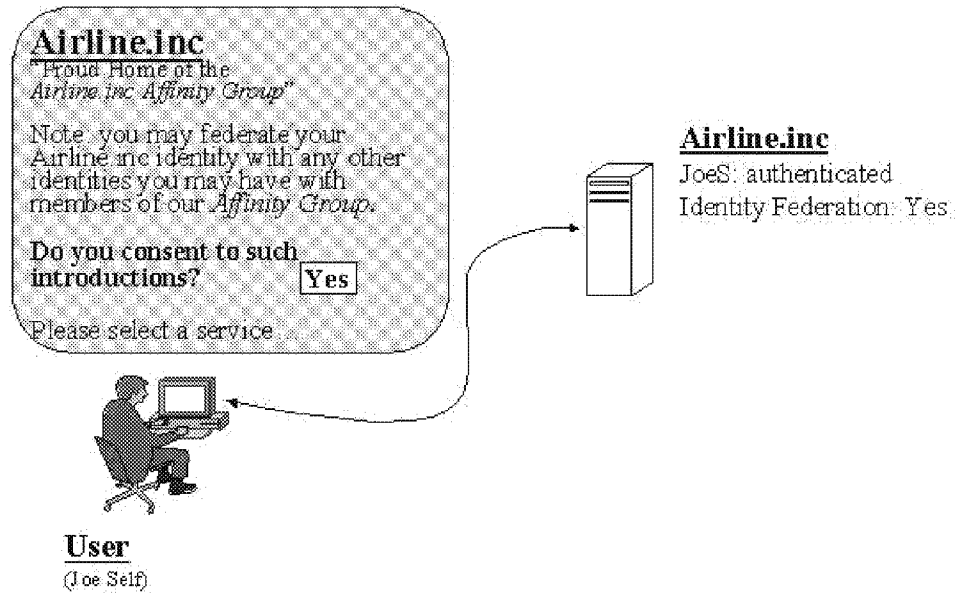


Figure 4. User is notified of eligibility for identity federation and elects to allow introductions.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Figure 4 illustrates the user's consent to being introduced to members of the affinity group. Such an introduction is the means by which a service provider may discover which identity providers in the circle of trust have authenticated the user.

In Figure 4 the user is not consenting to federating his identity with any service providers. Soliciting consent to identity federation is a separate step, as illustrated in Figure 5.

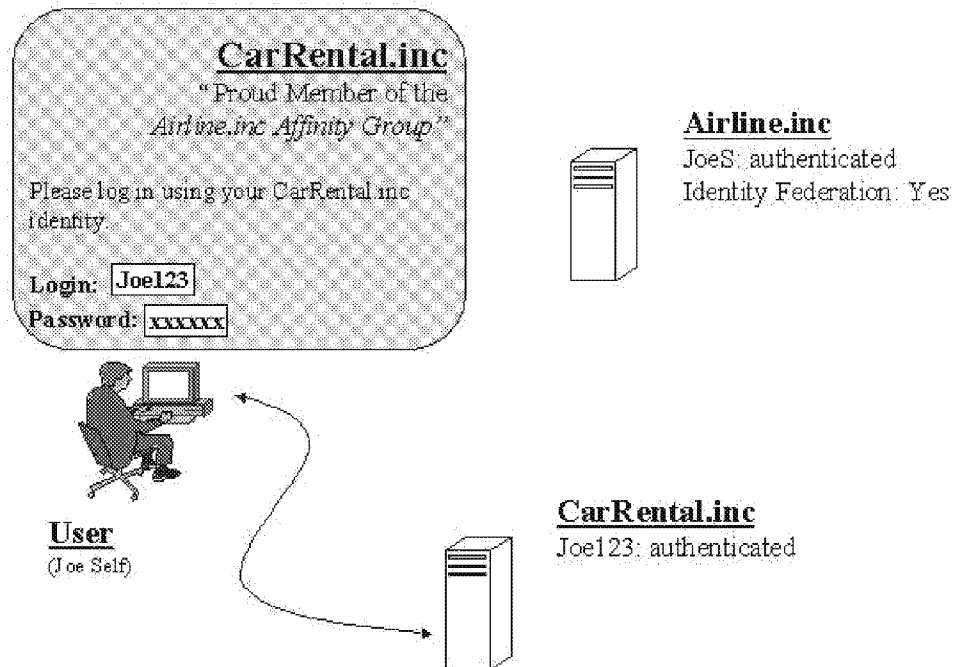
Introduction of the user to the affinity group members may be achieved via the Identity Provider Introduction Profile (as detailed in [LibertyBindProf]), or via other unspecified means, such as when the user agent is a Liberty-enabled client or proxy (LEC/P).

At some later point in time, typically minutes to a few hours, Joe Self may visit the Website of an affinity group member, for example, CarRental, Inc., whose site is CarRental.inc. Indeed, Joe Self may have followed an explicit link from the original Airline.inc Website to the CarRental.inc Website. In either case, CarRental.inc (a Liberty-enabled service provider) is able to discern that Joe Self recently interacted with the Airline.inc Website, because Joe Self elected to allow introductions.

TECHNICAL NOTE:

The actual means used to perform the introduction is an implementation and deployment decision. One possible means, the Identity Provider Introduction profile, is specified in [LibertyBindProf]. Note that the user may or may not need to log in in order to facilitate introduction - this depends on the specific introduction technique used.

If the service provider maintains local accounts, as in our example, it will typically, upon Joe Self's arrival, prompt Joe to log in, which he does using his local CarRental.inc identity. See Figure 5.



178

179

Figure 5. User signs-on using his local service provider identity.

180 Thereafter, Joe Self is presented with the opportunity to federate his local identities between CarRental.inc and
 181 Airline.inc. See Figure 6.

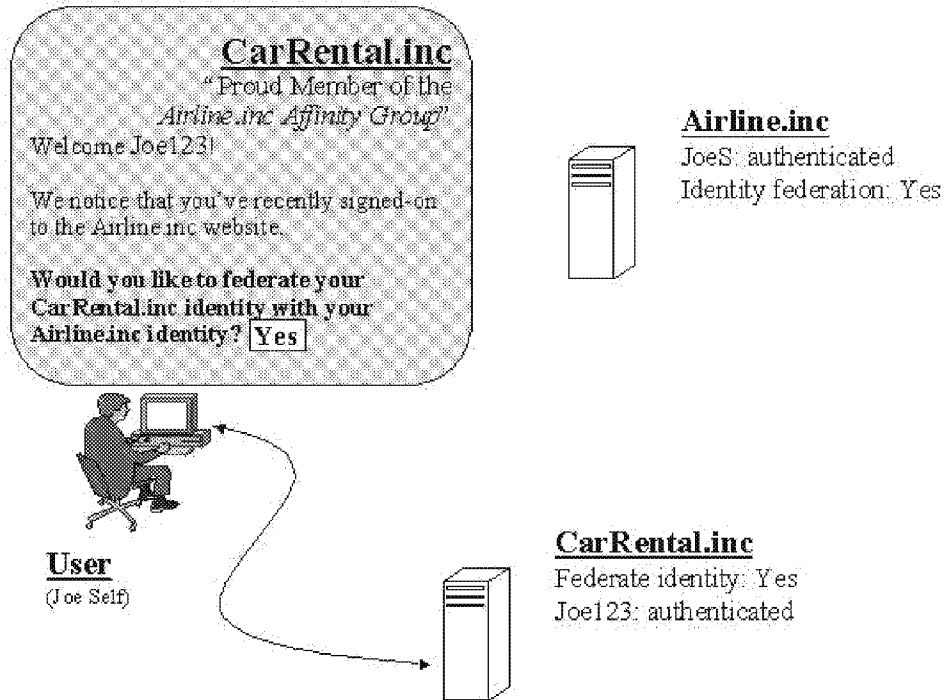
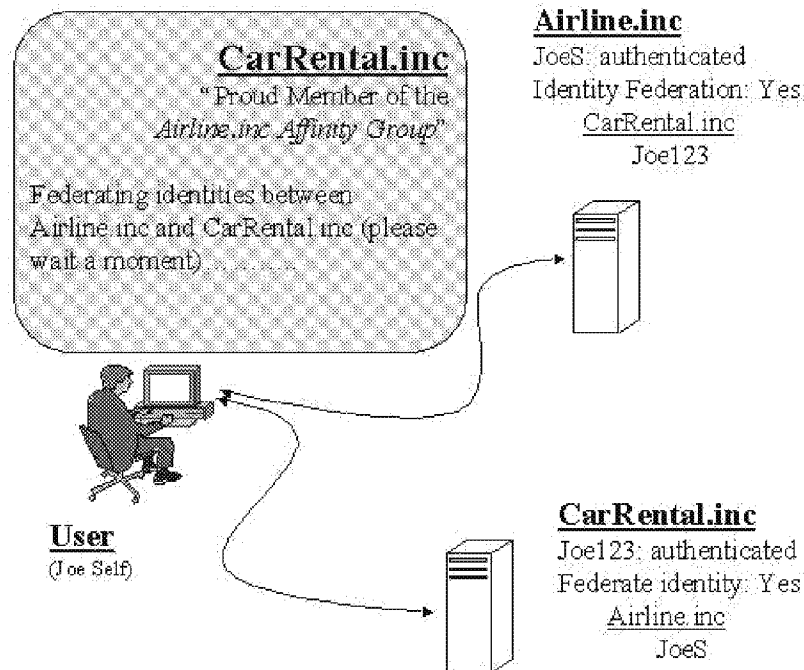


Figure 6. User is prompted to federate his local identities and selects "yes."

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Whether the service provider asks for consent to federate the user's local identity before or after locally authenticating the user is a matter of local deployment policy.

As a part of logging in to the CarRental.inc Website, Joe Self's local CarRental.inc identity is federated with his local Airline.inc identity. See Figure 7.



189

190

Figure 7. The Websites federate the user's local identities.

191 Upon completion of the login and identity federation activity, Joe User is logged in to the CarRental.inc Website, and
 192 CarRental.inc delivers services to him as usual. In addition, the Website may now offer new selections because Joe
 193 Self's local service provider (CarRental.inc) identity has been federated with his local identity provider (Airline.inc)
 194 identity. See Figure 8.

195 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

196 Some figures illustrating the user experience, for example, Figure 7, show simplified, user-perspective notions
 197 of how identity federation is effected. In actuality, cleartext identifiers, for example, "JoeS" and "Joe123"
 198 WILL NOT be exchanged between the identity provider and service provider. Rather, opaque user handles
 199 will be exchanged. See Section 4.4.1 for details.

200 Additionally, if errors are encountered in the process of authenticating and/or federating, the service provider
 201 will need to present appropriate indications to the user.

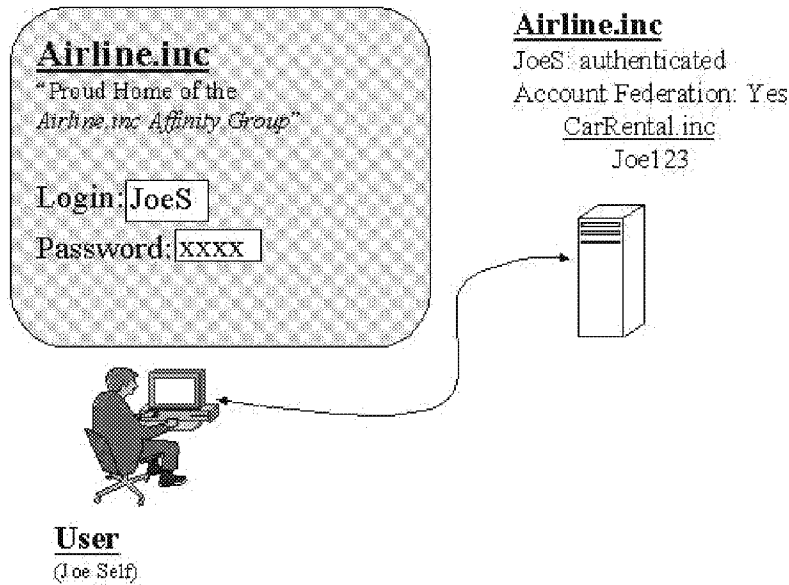


Figure 8. The service provider delivers services to user as usual.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Business prerequisites must be met to offer identity federation. Two prerequisites are notifying the user of the capability to federate and soliciting consent to facilitate introductions. Another is creating agreements between the affinity group members to establish their policies for recognizing identities and honoring reciprocal authentication.

2.2. Example of Single Sign-on User Experience

Single sign-on builds upon identity federation and has a simple user experience. Joe Self logs in to the Airline.inc Website and later visits the CarRental.inc Website with which he has established identity federation. Joe Self's authentication state with the Airline.inc Website is reciprocally honored by the CarRental.inc Website, and Joe Self is transparently logged in to the latter site. See Figure 9 and Figure 10.

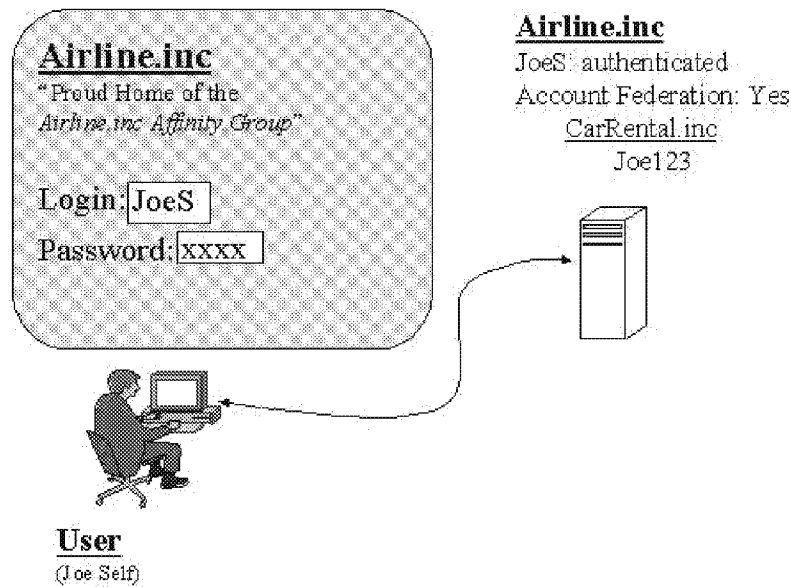


Figure 9. User logs in to identity provider's Website using local identity.

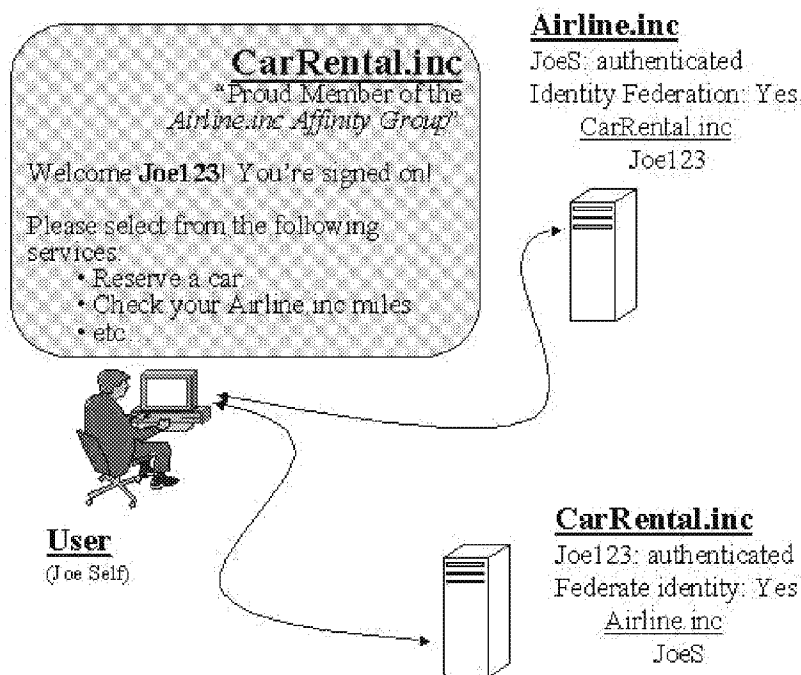


Figure 10. User proceeds to service provider's Website, and his authentication state is reciprocally honored by the service provider's Website.

A perceptive Joe Self will notice that his name in the CarRental.inc session is based upon his local CarRental.inc identity, rather than the local Airline.inc identity with which it has been federated.

221 **TECHNICAL NOTE:**

222 Because users' actual account identifiers are not exchanged during federation, a service provider will not be
223 able to display a user's identity provider identifier.

224 Also, many types of service provider Websites may not use a personally identifiable identifier in response to
225 the user. For example, advertising-driven sites where users may specify display preferences, for example, a
226 sporting events schedule site. The site may simply transparently refer to the user as "you," for example, "Set
227 your display preferences here....," "Here is the list of upcoming events you're interested in....," etc.

228 **SECURITY/POLICY NOTE:**

229 Even though the user may be validly authenticated via the single sign-on mechanism, the user's use of the
230 service provider's Website is still subject to local policy. For example, the site may have time-of-day usage
231 restrictions, the site may be undergoing maintenance, the user's relationship with the service provider may
232 be in a particular state (for example, highly valued customer - show the user the bonus pages; troublesome
233 customer - remind the user of unpaid bills and restrict some access).

3. Liberty Engineering Requirements Summary

This section summarizes the Liberty general and functional engineering requirements.

3.1. General Requirements

The Liberty-enabled systems should follow the set of general principals outlined in Section 3.1.1 and Section 3.1.2. These principles cut across categories of functionality.

3.1.1. Client Device/User Agent Interoperability

Liberty Version 1.2 clients encompass a broad range of presently deployed Web browsers, other presently deployed Web-enabled client access devices, and newly designed Web-enabled browsers or clients with specific Liberty-enabled features.

The Liberty Version 1.2 architecture and protocol specifications must support a basic level of functionality across the range of Liberty Version 1.2 clients.

3.1.2. Openness Requirements

The Liberty architecture and protocol specifications must provide the widest possible support for:

- Operating systems
- Programming languages
- Network infrastructures

and must not impede multivendor interoperability between Liberty clients and services, including interoperability across circle of trust boundaries.

3.2. Functional Requirements

The Liberty architecture and protocols must be specified so that Liberty-enabled implementations are capable of performing the following activities:

- Identity federation
- Authentication
- Use of pseudonyms
- Support for Anonymity
- Global logout

3.2.1. Identity Federation

Requirements of identity federation stipulate that:

- Providers give the user notice upon identity federation and defederation.

- 263 • Service providers and identity providers notify each other about identity defederation.
- 264 • Each identity provider notifies appropriate service providers of user account terminations at the identity provider.
- 265 • Each service provider and/or identity provider gives each of its users a list of the user's federated identities at the
- 266 identity provider or service provider.
- 267 • A service provider may also request an anonymous, temporary identity for a Principal.

268 3.2.2. Authentication

269 Authentication requirements include:

- 270 • Supporting any method of navigation between identity providers and service providers on the part of the user, that
- 271 is, how the user navigates from A to B (including click-through, favorites or bookmarks, URL address bar, etc.)
- 272 must be supported.
- 273 • Giving the identity provider's authenticated identity to the user before the user gives credentials or any other
- 274 personally identifiable information to the identity provider.
- 275 • Providing for the confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity of information exchanged between identity providers,
- 276 service providers, and user agents, as well as mutually authenticating the identities of the identity providers and
- 277 service providers, during the authentication and single sign-on processes.
- 278 • Supporting a range of authentication methods, extensibly identifying authentication methods, providing for
- 279 coalescing authentication methods into authentication classes, and citing and exchanging authentication classes.
- 280 Protocols for exchanging this information are out of the scope of the Liberty Version 1.2 specifications, however.
- 281 • Exchanging the following minimum set of authentication information with regard to a user: authentication status,
- 282 instant, method, and pseudonym (which may be temporary or persistent).
- 283 • Giving service providers the capability of causing the identity provider to reauthenticate the user using the same
- 284 or a different authentication class. Programmatic exchange of the set of authentication classes for which a user is
- 285 registered at an identity provider is out of the scope of the Liberty Version 1.2 specifications, however.
- 286 • Allowing an identity provider, at the discretion of the service provider, to authenticate the user via an identity
- 287 provider other than itself and relay this information to a service provider.

288 3.2.3. Pseudonyms

289 Liberty-enabled implementations must be able to support the use of pseudonyms that are unique on a per-identity-
290 federation basis across all identity providers and service providers.

291 3.2.4. Anonymity

292 A service provider may request that an identity provider supply a temporary pseudonym that will preserve the
293 anonymity of a Principal. This identifier may be used to obtain information for or about the Principal (with his or
294 her permission) via mechanisms that are outside the scope of the ID-FF, without requiring the user to consent to a long
295 term relationship with the service provider.

296 3.2.5. Global Logout

297 Liberty-enabled implementations must be able to support the notification of service providers when a user logs out at
298 identity provider.

4. Liberty Architecture

The overall Liberty architecture is composed of three orthogonal architectural components (see Figure 11):

- Web redirection
- Web services
- Metadata and schemas

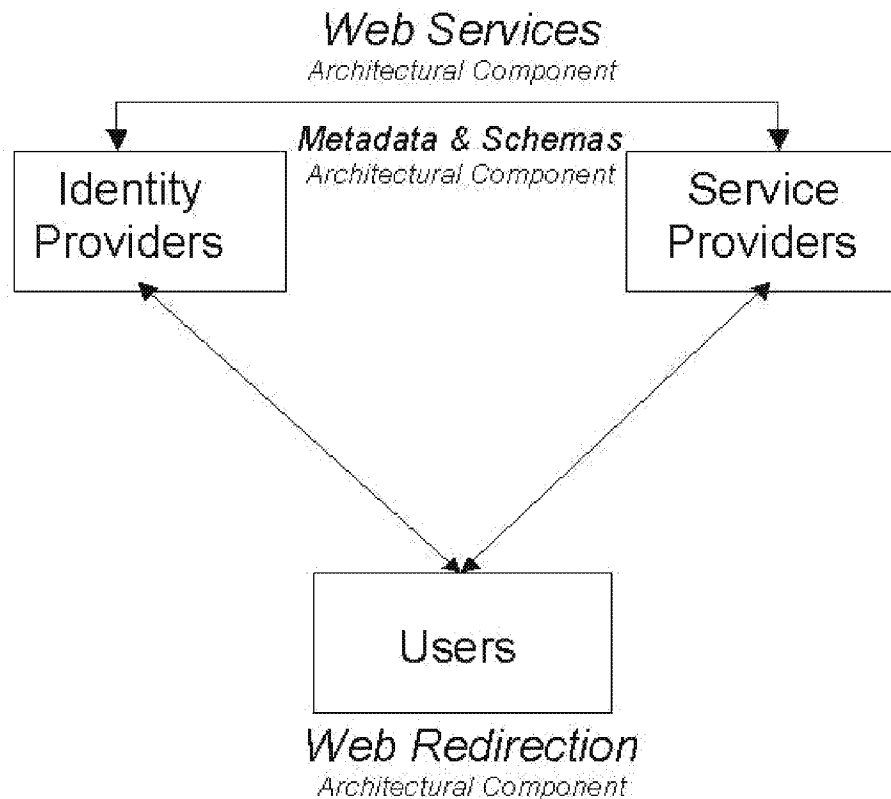


Figure 11. Overall Liberty architecture

The role of each architectural component is summarized in Table 2:

Table 2. Components of Liberty architecture

Web redirection	Action that enables Liberty-enabled entities to provide services via today's user-agent-installed base.
Web services	Protocol profiles that enable Liberty-enabled entities to directly communicate.
Metadata and schemas	A common set of metadata and formats used by Liberty-enabled sites to communicate various provider-specific and other information.

Section 4.1 through Section 4.3 describe each architectural component. Section 4.4 through Section 4.6 then relate the architectural components to the concrete protocols and profiles detailed in [LibertyProtSchema] and [LibertyBindProf], and Section 4.7 provides illustrations of user experience.

4.1. Web Redirection Architectural Component

The Web redirection architectural component is composed of two generic variants: HTTP-redirect-based redirection and form-POST-based redirection. Both variants create a communication channel between identity providers and service providers that is rooted in the user agent. See Figure 12.

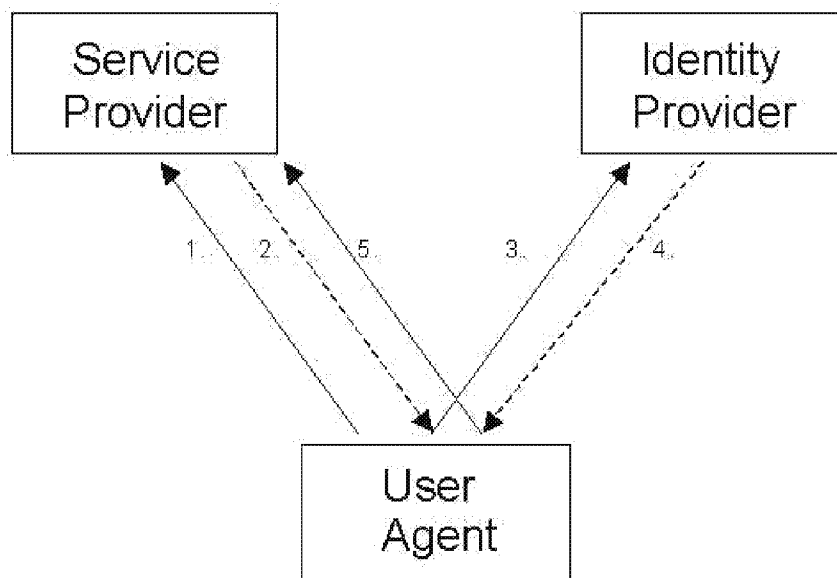


Figure 12. Web redirection between a service provider and an identity provider via the user agent

4.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Redirection

HTTP-redirect-based redirection uses the HTTP redirection class of response (that is, *redirects*) of the HTTP protocol (see [RFC2616]) and the syntax of URIs (see [RFC1738] and [RFC2396]) to provide a communication channel between identity providers and service providers. Thus the steps shown in Figure 12 create a communication channel between the service provider and identity provider as follows:

1. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the service provider (typically a GET). In this step the user has typically clicked on a link in the Webpage presently displayed in the user agent.
2. The service provider responds with an HTTP response with a status code of 302 (that is, a redirect) and an alternate URI in the Location header field. In this example, the Location URI will point to the identity provider and will also contain a second, embedded URI pointing back to the service provider.
3. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the identity provider (typically a GET), specifying the complete URI taken from the Location field of the response returned in Step 2 as the argument of the GET. Note: This URI contains the second, embedded URI pointing back to the service provider.
4. The identity provider can then respond in kind with a redirect whose Location header field contains the URI pointing to the service provider (extracted from the GET argument URI supplied in Step 3) and optionally contains an embedded, second URI pointing back to itself.
5. The user agent sends an HTTP request to the service provider (typically a GET), specifying the complete URI taken from the Location field of the response returned in Step 4 as the argument of the GET. Note: This URI might contain any second, embedded URI pointing back to the identity provider.

Note:

Both URIs are passed as arguments of HTTP GET requests, and the Location response-header field of redirect responses can contain either or both embedded URIs and other arbitrary data. Thus the identity provider and service provider can relatively freely exchange arbitrary information between themselves across this channel. See Table 3.

Table 3. Embedding a parameter within an HTTP redirect

Location: http://www.foobar.com/auth	Redirects to foobar.com
Location: http://www.foobar.com/auth?XYZ=1234	Redirects to foobar.com and also passes a parameter "XYZ" with the value "1234"

4.1.2. Form-POST-Based Redirection

In form-POST-based redirection, the following steps in Figure 12 are modified as follows:

2. The service provider responds by returning an HTML form to the user agent containing an action parameter pointing to the identity provider and a method parameter with the value of POST. Arbitrary data may be included in other form fields. The form may also include a JavaScript or ECMAScript fragment that causes the next step to be performed without user interaction.
3. Either the user clicks on the Submit button, or the JavaScript or ECMAScript executes. In either case, the form and its arbitrary data contents are sent to the identity provider via the HTTP POST method.

The above process can be reversed in Steps 4 and 5 to effect form-POST-based communication in the opposite direction.

4.1.3. Cookies**POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

Use of cookies by implementors and deployers should be carefully considered, especially if a cookie contains either or both personally identifying information and authentication information. Cookies can be either ephemeral (that is, this session only) or persistent. Persistent cookies are of special concern because they are typically written to disk and persist across user agent invocations. Thus if a session authentication token is cached in a persistent cookie, the user exits the browser, and another person uses the system and relaunches the browser, then the second person could impersonate the user (unless any authentication time limits imposed by the authentication mechanism have expired).

Additionally, persistent cookies should be used *only* with the consent of the user. This consent step allows, for example, a user at a public machine to prohibit a persistent cookie that would otherwise remain in the user agent's cookie cache after the user is finished.

4.1.3.1. Why Not Use Cookies in General?

Cookies are the HTTP state management mechanism specified in [RFC2965] and are a means for Web servers to store information, that is, maintain state, in the user agent. However, the default security setting in the predominant user agents allow cookies to be read only by the Website that wrote them. This discrimination is based on the DNS domains of the reading and writing sites.

To permit multiple identity providers and service providers in different DNS domains to communicate using cookies, users must lower the default security settings of their user agents. This option is often an unacceptable requirement.

371 Additionally, it is not uncommon for users and/or their organizations to operate their user agents with cookies turned
372 off.

373 4.1.3.2. Where Cookies are Used

374 In the Liberty context, cookies might be used for maintaining local session state, and cookies are used in addressing
375 the introduction problem (see Section 4.5).

376 The fact that identity providers cannot arbitrarily send data to service providers via cookies does not preclude
377 identity providers and service providers from writing cookies to store local session state and other, perhaps persistent,
378 information.

379 4.1.4. Web Redirection Summary

380 Web redirection is not an ideal distributed systems architecture.

381 POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

382 Communications across Web redirection channels as described in Section 4.1.1 through Section 4.1.3 have
383 many well-documented security vulnerabilities, which should be given careful consideration when designing
384 protocols utilizing Web redirection. Such consideration was incorporated into the design of the profiles
385 specified in [LibertyBindProf], and specific considerations are called out as appropriate in that document (for
386 example, regarding cleartext transmissions and caching vulnerabilities). Examples of security vulnerabilities
387 include:

388 • **Interception:** Such communications go across the wire in cleartext unless all the steps in Section 4.1.1
389 through Section 4.1.3 are carried out over an SSL or TLS session or across another secured communication
390 transport, for example, an IPsec-based VPN.

391 • **User agent leakage:** Because the channel is redirected through the user agent, many opportunities arise
392 for the information to be cached in the user agent and revealed later. This caching is possible even if a secure
393 transport is used because the conveyed information is kept in the clear in the browser. Thus any sensitive
394 information conveyed in this fashion needs to be encrypted on its own before being sent across the channel.

TECHNICAL NOTE:

A key limitation of Web redirection is the overall size of URIs passed as arguments of GET requests and as values of the Location field in redirects. These elements have size limitations that vary from browser to browser and are particularly small in some mobile handsets. These limitations were incorporated into the design of the protocols specified in [LibertyProtSchema] and [LibertyBindProf].

In spite of the vulnerabilities and limitations of Web redirection, use of this mechanism enables distributed, cross-domain interactions, such as single sign-on, with today's deployed HTTP infrastructure on the Internet.

Both generic variants of Web redirection underlie several of the profiles specified in [LibertyBindProf]: Single Sign-On and Federation, Identity Federation Termination Notification, Name Identifier Registration, and Single Logout.

4.2. Web Services Architectural Component

Various Liberty protocol interaction steps are profiled to occur directly between system entities in addition to other steps occurring via Web redirection and are based on RPC-like protocol messages conveyed via SOAP (see [SOAPv1.1]). SOAP is a widely implemented specification for RPC-like interactions and message communications using XML and HTTP and hence is a natural fit for this architectural component.

4.3. Metadata and Schemas Architectural Component

Metadata and schemas is an umbrella term generically referring to various subclasses of information and their formats exchanged between service providers and identity providers, whether via protocol or out of band. The subclasses of exchanged information are

- **Account/Identity:** In Liberty Version 1.2, account/identity is simply the opaque user handle that serves as the name that the service provider and the identity provider use in referring to the user when communicating. In other Liberty phases, it encompasses various attributes.
- **Authentication Context:** Liberty explicitly accommodates identity provider use of arbitrary authentication mechanisms and technologies. Different identity providers will choose different technologies, follow different processes, and be bound by different legal obligations with respect to how they authenticate users. The choices that an identity provider makes here will be driven in large part by the requirements of the service providers with which the identity provider has federated. Those requirements, in turn, will be determined by the nature of the service (that is, the sensitivity of any information exchanged, the associated financial value, the service providers risk tolerance, etc) that the service provider will be providing to the user. Consequently, for anything other than trivial services, if the service provider is to place sufficient confidence in the authentication assertions it receives from an identity provider, the service provider must know which technologies, protocols, and processes were used or followed for the original authentication mechanism on which the authentication assertion is based. The authentication context schema provides a means for service providers and identity providers to communicate such information (see [LibertyAuthnContext]).
- **Provider Metadata:** For identity providers and service providers to communicate with each other, they must a priori have obtained metadata regarding each other. These provider metadata include items such as X.509 certificates and service endpoints. [LibertyMetadata] defines metadata schemas for identity providers and service providers that may be used for provider metadata exchange.

4.4. Single Sign-On and Identity Federation

The single sign-on and identity federation aspects of Liberty are facilitated by the Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol, which is specified in [LibertyProtSchema]. It facilitates both identity federation (see Section 4.4.1) and single sign-on (see Section 4.4.2) in a single overall protocol flow. The various profiles of the overall protocol flow that are defined in [LibertyBindProf] are discussed in Section 4.4.3.

4.4.1. Single Sign-On and Identity Federation

The first time that users use an identity provider to log in to a service provider they must be given the option of federating an existing local identity on the service provider with the identity provider login to preserve existing information under the single sign-on. See Figure 13. It is critical that, in a system with multiple identity providers and service providers, a mechanism exists by which users can be (at their discretion) uniquely identified across the providers. However, it is technically challenging to create a globally unique ID that is not tied to a particular identity provider and a business challenge to ensure the portability of globally unique IDs.



Figure 13. User initiates federation of two identities

An explicit trust relationship, or chain, is created with the opt-in identity federation that occurs the first time a user logs in to a service provider using an identity provider. While multiple identities can be federated to each other, an explicit link exists between each identity. Providers cannot skip over each other in the trust chain to request information on or services for a user because user identity information must be checked at each step. Therefore, the only requirement is that, when two elements of a trust chain communicate, they can differentiate users.

Members of the circle of trust are not required to provide the actual account identifier for a user and can instead provide a handle for a particular user. Members can also choose to create multiple handles for a particular user. However, identity providers must create a single handle for each service provider that has multiple Websites so that the handle can be resolved across the Websites.

Because both the identity provider and service provider in such a federation need to remember the other's handle for the user, they create entries in their user directories for each other and note each other's handle for the user. See Figure 14 and Figure 15.

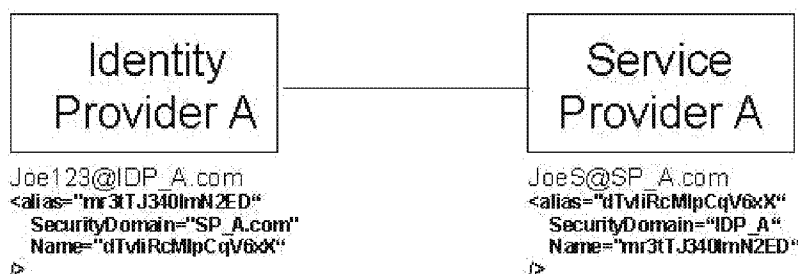


Figure 14. User directories of the identity provider and service provider upon identity federation

TECHNICAL NOTE:

Figure 14, along with the three following figures, illustrate bilateral identity federation; this is where both the service provider and identity provider exchange handles for the user. However, bilateral handle exchange

is an *optional* feature of the Liberty Single Sign-On and Federation protocol. In some scenarios, only the identity provider's handle will be conveyed to the service provider(s). This will typically be the case where the service provider doesn't otherwise maintain its own user repository.

The lines connecting the identity and service providers in the aforementioned figures signify federation relationships rather than communication exchanges.

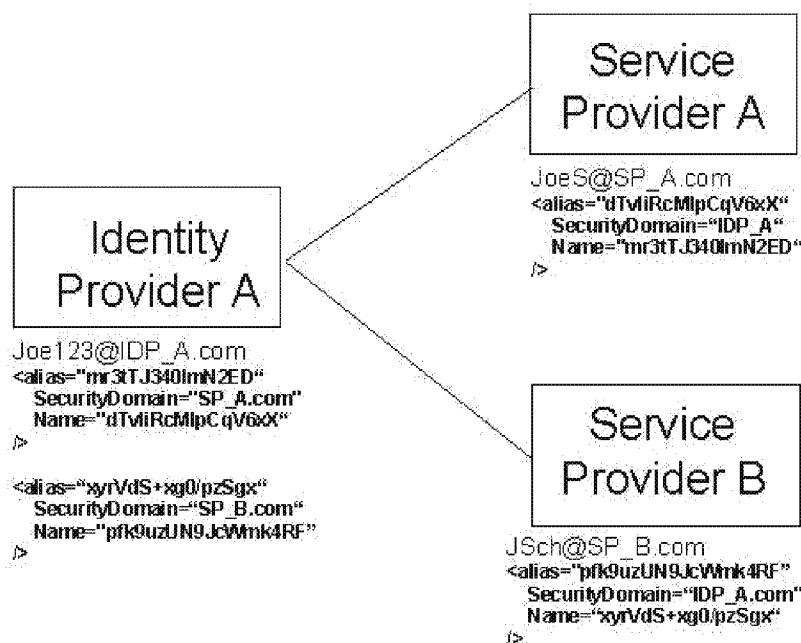


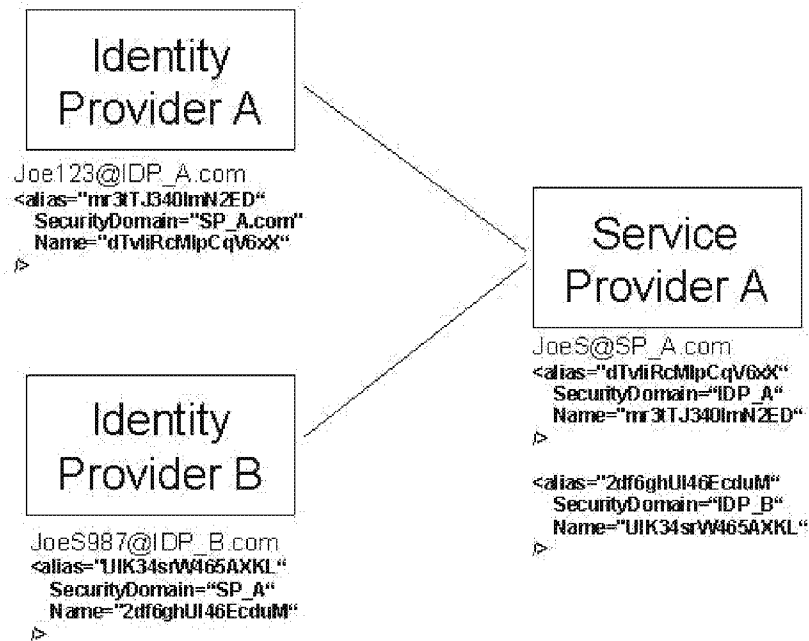
Figure 15. User directories of the identity provider and multiple service providers upon identity federation.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

1. Observe in Figure 15 that SP_A and SP_B cannot communicate directly about Joe Self. They can only communicate with the identity provider individually. This feature is desirable from policy and security perspectives. If Joe Self wishes the service providers to be able to exchange information about him, then he must explicitly federate the two service provider identities, effectively opting in. Another aspect of this feature is that if the user's local identity is compromised on, for example, SP_A, the local identities at IDP_A or SP_B are not necessarily also compromised.

2. Properties of the user handles, for example, mr3tJ340ImN2ED, (also known as *name identifiers*) need to be carefully considered. It may not be enough for them to be opaque. Considerations of the construction of name identifiers are discussed in [LibertyProtSchema]. Additionally, user handles should be refreshed periodically. Service providers may refresh the user handles they optionally supply to identity providers via the register name identifier profile defined in [LibertyBindProf]. Identity providers may also use the same profile to optionally refresh the user handles they supply to service providers.

483 While it is obvious that a user can sign in at multiple service providers with an identity provider, a user can also link
 484 multiple identity providers to a particular service provider. See Figure 16. This ability proves useful when a user
 485 switches from a work computer to a home computer or from a computer to a mobile device, each of which may be
 486 associated with a different identity provider and circle of trust.



487
 488 Figure 16. A user with two identity providers federated to a service provider

489 **POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:**

490 Subtle considerations arise here in terms of how easy it is for a user to switch between identities and how
 491 this capability is materialized. IDP_A may belong to the same circles of trust as more than one of the user's
 492 devices. Therefore, certain questions arise, for example, How do users know to which (or both) identity
 493 provider they are presently logged in? Features satisfying such questions are a way for identity providers and
 494 circles of trust to differentiate themselves.

495 While federating two identity providers to a service provider, as illustrated in Figure 16, enables the user to log
 496 in to the service provider using either identity provider, the user must remember to federate new service providers
 497 to both identity providers, which can be a cumbersome process. An alternative is for the user to federate identity
 498 providers together and set policies enabling identity providers to access each other's information. See Figure 17 and
 499 the following POLICY/SECURITY NOTE. The user can then use a preferred identity provider to log in to service
 500 providers, but always has the choice of adding additional identity providers to a service provider.

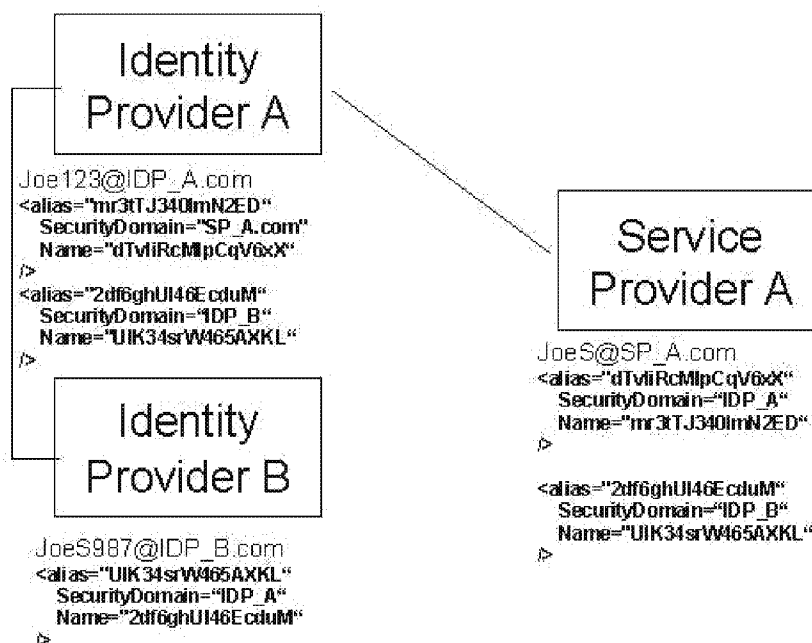


Figure 17. A user with two identity providers federated

TECHNICAL NOTE:

In Figure 17, Identity Provider A is acting as both a service provider and an identity provider.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

• The semantics of such a federated relationship (Figure 17) between identity providers are not dictated by the underlying Liberty protocols, nor are they precluded. These semantics need to be addressed by the agreements between the identity providers and supported by the capabilities of the deployed Liberty-enabled implementations.

• Additionally, how trust relationships between identity providers are established, and how those relationships are represented to service providers, are unspecified. Identity providers enabling relationships such as that illustrated in Figure 17 must mutually define governing policies and means of representing such trust relationships to relying service providers (for example Service Provider A in Figure 17).

• Circle of trust agreements should address how federation failures are materialized to users.

• Appropriate portions of the assertions passed between the identity provider and the service provider to effect federation should be logged.

• By creating many local identities with many service providers and/or identity providers and then federating them, users possess many sets of local credentials that may be used as a basis to authenticate with many service providers via single sign-on. This situation constitutes a risk. For example, every identity provider that possesses reusable user credentials, for example, a username and password, can impersonate the user at every service provider federated with that account. In the normal course of events, some local credentials may go unused for periods of time because the user is making use of the local account via single sign-on from another identity provider. Thus a means of controlling the growth of a user's set of local credentials might be to offer the user the option of invalidating local credentials at identity federation time and also perhaps after a certain number of times of visiting the Website without using them.

4.4.1.1. No Need for Global Account/Identity Namespace

Given the above architecture where users opt to federate identities at different identity providers and service providers, a global namespace across all of the players should not be needed. Circle of trust members can communicate with each other, about or on a user's behalf, only when a user has created a specific federation between the local identities and has set policies for that federation. Although long chains of identity providers and service providers can be created, the user's identity is federated in each link in the chain and, therefore, a globally unique ID need not exist for that user across all of the elements of the chain. See Figure 17.

4.4.1.2. Single Sign-On with Anonymity

In some scenarios, a user may not need to establish a long term relationship or identifier with a service in order to use that service, or gain the benefits of single sign-on across services using the same identity provider. Typically, the short-term identifier that is given to a service can be leveraged at the time of sign-on to obtain other information or provide services to the user through the use of additional protocols that are outside the scope of Liberty ID-FF.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

When such an identifier is requested, it must be generated for a single use, and given only to a single service provider, rather than shared or reused. Other information shared about the user through other means should be at the user's discretion.

4.4.1.3. Federation Management: Defederation

Users will have the ability to terminate federations, or defederate identities. [LibertyProtSchema] and [LibertyBind-Prof] specify a Federation Termination Notification Protocol and related profiles. Using this protocol, a service provider may initiate defederation with an identity provider or vice versa. The nominal user experience is for the user to select a Defederate link on a service provider's or identity provider's Webpage. This link initiates defederation with respect to some other, specific, identity provider or service provider.

When defederation is initiated at an identity provider, the identity provider is stating to the service provider that it will no longer provide user identity information to the service provider and that the identity provider will no longer respond to any requests by the service provider on behalf of the user.

When defederation is initiated at a service provider, the service provider is stating to the identity provider that the user has requested that the identity provider no longer provide the user identity information to the service provider and that service provider will no longer ask the identity provider to do anything on the behalf of the user.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Regarding defederation, several issues must be considered:

- The user should be authenticated by the provider at which identity defederation is being initiated.
- Providers should ask the user for confirmation before performing defederation and appropriately log the event and appropriate portions of the user's authentication information.
- It is recommended that the service provider, after initiating or receiving a federation termination notification for a Principal, check whether that Principal is presently logged in to the service provider on the basis of an assertion from the identity provider with which the federation termination notification was exchanged. If so, then the local session information that was based on the identity provider's assertion should be invalidated. If the service provider has local session state information for the Principal that is not based on assertions made by the identity provider with which the federation termination notification was exchanged, then the service provider may continue to maintain that information.

• If the Principal subsequently initiates a single sign-on session with the same identity provider, the service provider will need to request federation as well as authentication from the identity provider.

• Other means of federation termination are possible, such as federation expiration and termination of business agreements between service providers and identity providers.

4.4.2. Single Sign-on

Single sign-on is enabled once a user's identity provider and service provider identities are federated. From a user's perspective, single sign-on is realized when the user logs in to an identity provider and uses multiple affiliated service providers without having to sign on again (see Figure 18). This convenience is accomplished by having federated the user's local identities between the applicable identity providers and the service providers. The basic user single sign-on experience is illustrated in Section 4.4.1.

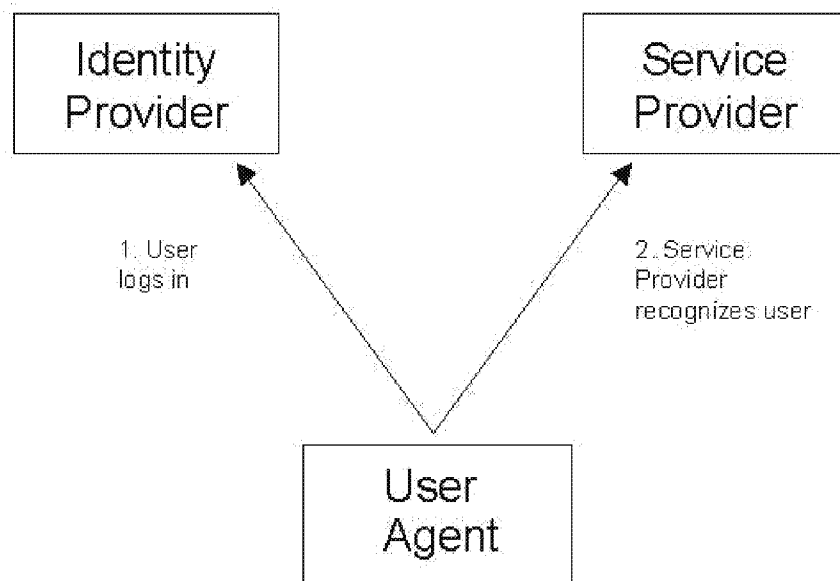


Figure 18. User logs in at identity provider and is recognized by service provider

[LibertyBindProf] specifies single sign-on by profiling both the "Browser/Artifact Profile" and the "Browser/Post Profile" of SAML (see [SAMLBind]).

Note:

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE: Regarding authentication, single sign-on, credentials, etc., several issues must be considered:

Authentication Mechanisms are Orthogonal to Single Sign-On

Single sign-on is a means by which a service provider or identity provider may convey to another service provider or identity provider that the user is in fact authenticated. The means by which the user was originally authenticated is called the authentication mechanism. Examples of authentication mechanisms are username with password (*not* HTTP Basic Auth), certificate-based (for example, via SSL or TLS), Kerberos, etc.

Identity Provider Session State Maintenance

Identity providers need to maintain authentication state information for principals. This is also known as "local session state maintenance", where "local" implies "local to the identity provider". There are several mechanisms for maintaining local session state information in the context of HTTP-based [RFC2616] user agents (commonly known as "web browsers"). Cookies are one such mechanism and are specified in [RFC2965]. Identity providers use local session state information, mapped to the participating user agent (see Figure 18), as the basis for issuing authentication assertions to service providers who are performing the "Single Sign-On and Federation" protocol [LibertyBindProf] with the identity provider. Thus, when the Principal uses his user agent to interact with yet another service provider, that service provider will send an <AuthnRequest> to the identity provider. The identity provider will check its local session state information for that user agent, and return to the service provider an <AuthnResponse> containing an authentication assertion if its local session state information indicates the user agent's session with the identity provider is presently active.

Credentials

Credentials are relied upon in a number of ways in a single sign-on system and are often the basis for establishing trust with the credential bearer. Credentials may represent security-related attributes of the bearer, including the owner's identity. Sensitive credentials that require special protection, such as private cryptographic keys, must be protected from unauthorized exposure. Some credentials are intended to be shared, such as public-key certificates.

Credentials are a general notion of the data necessary to prove an assertion. For example, in a password-based authentication system, the user name and password would be considered credentials. However, the use of credentials is not limited to authentication. Credentials may also be relied upon in the course of making an authorization decision.

As mentioned above, certain credentials must be kept confidential. However, some credentials not only need to remain confidential, but also must be integrity-protected to prevent them from being tampered with or even fabricated. Other credentials, such as the artifacts described in Section 4.4.3.1, must have the properties of a nonce. A nonce is a random or nonrepeating value that is included in data exchanged by a protocol, usually for guaranteeing liveness and thus detecting and protecting against replay attacks.

Authentication Type, Multitiered Authentication

All authentication assertions should include an authentication type that indicates the quality of the credentials and the mechanism used to vet them. Credentials used to authenticate a user or supplied to authorize a transaction and/or the authentication mechanism used to vet the credentials may not be of sufficient quality to complete the transaction.

For example, a user initially authenticates to the identity provider using username and password. The user then attempts to conduct a transaction, for instance, a bank withdrawal, which requires a stronger form of authentication. In this case the user must present a stronger assertion of identity, such as a public-key certificate or something ancillary such as birthdate, mother's maiden name, etc. This act is *reauthentication* and the overall functionality is *multitiered authentication*. Wielding multitiered authentication can be a policy decision at the service provider and can be at the discretion of the service provider. Or it might be established as part of the contractual arrangements of the circle of trust. In this case, the circle of trust members can agree among themselves upon the trust they put in different authentication types and of each other's authentication assertions. Such an agreement's form may be similar to today's certificate practice statements (CPS) (for example, see <http://www.verisign.com/repository/cps20/cps20.pdf>). The information cited in such a document may include

- User identification methods during credentials enrollment
- Credentials renewal frequency
- Methods for storing and protecting credentials (e.g., smartcard, phone, encrypted file on hard drive)

Note:

While the current Liberty specifications allow service providers, identity providers, and user agents to support authentication using a range of methods, the methods and their associated protocol exchanges are not specified within Liberty documents. Further, the scope of the current Liberty specifications does not include a means for a communicating identity provider and user agent to identify a set of methods that they are both equipped to support. As a result, support for the Liberty specifications is not in itself sufficient to ensure effective interoperability between arbitrary identity providers and user agents using arbitrary methods and must, instead, be complemented with data obtained from other sources.

Also, the scope of the current Liberty specifications does not include a means for a service provider to interrogate an identity provider and determine the set of authentication profiles for which a user is registered at that identity provider. As a result, effective service provider selection of specific profiles to authenticate a particular user will require access to out-of-band information describing users' capabilities.

For example, members of a given circle of trust may agree that they will label an authentication assertion based on PKI technology and face-to-face user identity verification with substantiating documentation at enrollment time to be of type "Strong." Then, when an identity provider implementing these policies and procedures asserts that a user has logged in using the specified PKI-based authentication mechanism, service providers rely upon said assertion to a certain degree. This degree of reliance is likely different from the degree put into an assertion by an identity provider who uses the same PKI-based authentication mechanism, but who does not claim to subject the user to the same amount of scrutiny at enrollment time. This issue has another dimension: Who performs the reauthentication? An identity provider or the service provider itself? This question is both an implementation and deployment issue and an operational policy issue. Implementations and deployments need to support having either the identity provider or the service provider perform reauthentication when the business considerations dictate it (that is, the operational policy). For example, a circle of trust may decide that the risk factors are too large for having the identity provider perform reauthentication in certain high-value interactions and that the service provider taking on the risk of the interaction must be able to perform the reauthentication.

Mutual Authentication

Another dimension of the authentication type and quality space is mutual authentication. For a user authenticating himself to an identity provider, mutual authentication implies that the identity provider server authenticates itself with the user as well as vice versa. Mutual authentication is a function of the particular authentication mechanism employed. For example, any user authentication performed over SSL or TLS is mutual authentication because the server is authenticated to the client by default with SSL or TLS. This feature can be the basis of some greater assurance, but does have its set of vulnerabilities. The server may be wielding a bogus certificate, and the user may not adequately inspect it or understand the significance.

Validating Liveness

Liveness refers to whether the user who authenticated at time t_0 is the same user who is about to perform a given operation at time t_1 . For example, a user may log in and perform various operations and then attempt to perform a given operation that the service provider considers high-value. The service provider may initiate reauthentication to attempt to validate that the user operating the system is still the same user that authenticated originally. Even though such an approach has many vulnerabilities, that is, it fails completely in the case of a rogue user, it does at least augment the service provider's audit trail. Therefore, at least some service providers will want to do it.

Authentication assertions from identity providers contain a `<ReauthenticationOnOrAfter>` element. If this attribute was specified and the time of the user request is past the specified reauthentication time, the service provider should redirect the user back to the identity provider for reauthentication.

Communication Security

A service provider can reject communications with an identity provider for various reasons. For example, it may be the policy of a service provider to require that all protocol exchanges between it and the bearer of a credential commence over a communication protocol that has certain qualities such as bilateral authentication, integrity protection, and message confidentiality.

4.4.3. Profiles of the Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol

The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol, as specified in [LibertyProtSchema], defines messages exchanged between service providers and identity providers. The concrete mapping of these messages to particular transfer (for example, HTTP) and/or messaging (for example, SOAP) protocols and precise protocol flows are specified in [LibertyBindProf]. These mappings are called profiles. The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol specifies three profiles. The following sections summarize each profile. For a detailed discussion of the common interactions and processing rules of these profiles and for details about each profile, see [LibertyBindProf].

TECHNICAL NOTE:

The Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol and related profiles specify means by which service providers indicate to identity providers the particular profile they wish to employ. The primary means is the `<lib:ProtocolProfile>` element of the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message, which is employed by all profiles of the Single Sign-On and Federation Protocol. Note: The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile employs additional means.

4.4.3.1. Liberty Artifact Profile

The Liberty artifact profile specifies embedding an artifact in a URI exchanged between the identity provider and service provider via Web redirection and also requires direct communication between the service provider and the identity provider. The artifact itself is an opaque user handle with which the service provider can query the identity provider to receive a full SAML assertion. The motivation for this approach is that the artifact can be small enough in its URI-encoded form to fit in a URI without concern for size limitations. The artifact has the property of being an opaque, pseudo-random nonce that can be used only once. These properties are countermeasures against replay attacks. The randomness property protects the artifact from being guessed by an adversary.

4.4.3.2. Liberty Browser POST Profile

Modern browsers that support JavaScript or ECMAScript can perform the redirect by sending an HTML page with form elements that contain data with a JavaScript or ECMAScript that automatically posts the form. Legacy browsers, or browsers with scripting disabled, must embed the data within the URI.

Note:

The Liberty browser POST profile embeds an assertion within an HTTP form per the form-POST-based redirection (see Section 4.1.2). As a result, this profile does not require any direct communication between the service provider and the identity provider to obtain an assertion. An entire authentication assertion can be included in the posted HTML form because the size allowances for HTML forms are great enough to accommodate one.. See Figure 19.

Figure 19. Example of JavaScript-based HTML form autosubmission with hidden fields

```
<HTML>
<BODY ONLOAD="javascript:document.forms[0].submit()">
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="www.foobar.com/auth">
<INPUT TYPE="HIDDEN" NAME="FOO" VALUE="1234"/>
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

TECHNICAL NOTE:

It must be stressed that Liberty browser POST profile should be supported only in addition to Liberty browser artifact profile due to its dependence on JavaScript (or ECMAScript).

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Implementors and deployers should provide for logging appropriate portions of the authentication assertion.

4.4.3.3. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile

The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile specifies interactions between Liberty-enabled clients and/or proxies, service providers, and identity providers. A Liberty-enabled client is a client that has, or knows how to obtain, knowledge about the identity provider that the user wishes to use with the service provider. In addition a Liberty-enabled client receives and sends Liberty messages in the body of HTTP requests and responses using POST, rather than relying upon HTTP redirects and encoding protocol parameters into URLs. Therefore, Liberty-enabled clients have no restrictions on the size of the Liberty protocol messages.

A Liberty-enabled proxy is a HTTP proxy (typically a WAP gateway) that emulates a Liberty-enabled client.

TECHNICAL NOTE:

The differences between this profile and the other Liberty POST-based profiles are that:

- It does not rely upon HTTP redirects.
- The interactions between the user agent and the identity provider are SOAP-based.
- The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile includes Liberty-specified HTTP headers in the protocol messages it sends, signifying to identity providers and service providers that it is Liberty-enabled and thus can support capabilities beyond those supported by common non-Liberty-enabled user agents.

4.4.3.4. Single Sign-On Protocol Flow Example: Liberty Artifact Profile

The first step in the single sign-on process in a Liberty artifact profile is that the user goes to a service provider and chooses to log in via the user's preferred identity provider. This login is accomplished by selecting the preferred identity provider from a list presented on the service provider's login page.

TECHNICAL NOTE:

The service provider may discover the preferred identity provider via the identity provider introduction mechanism discussed in Section 4.5 or, in the case of a Liberty-enabled client or proxy, by some other implementation-specific and unspecified means.

Once the user selects the identity provider, the user's browser is redirected to the identity provider with an embedded parameter indicating the originating service provider. The user can then log in to the identity provider as the user normally would. See Figure 20.

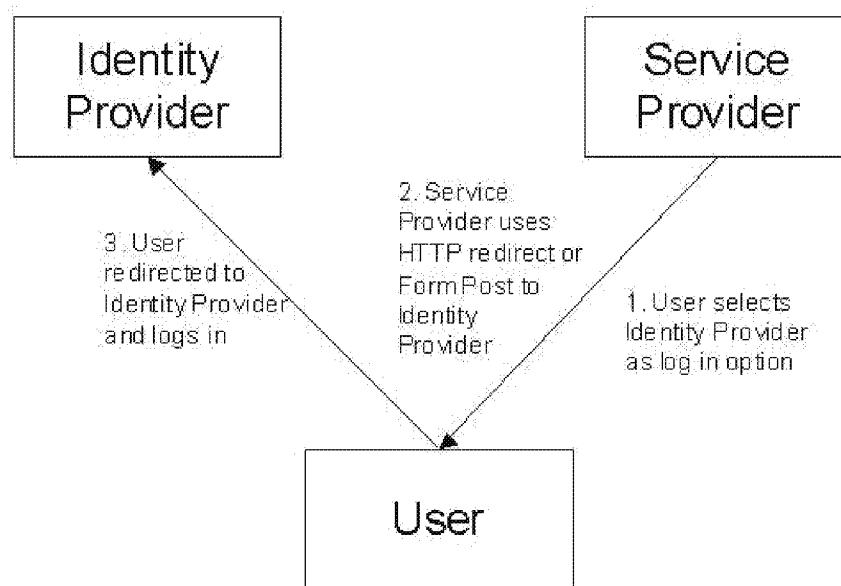


Figure 20. Single sign-on using HTTP redirect / form POST (1 of 2)

The identity provider then processes the login as normal and, upon successful login, redirects the user's browser to the originating service provider with a transient, encrypted credential, called an *artifact*, embedded within the URI. The service provider then parses the artifact from the URI and directly uses it to query the identity provider about the user. In its response, the identity provider vouches for the user, and the service provider may then establish a local notion of session state. See Figure 21.

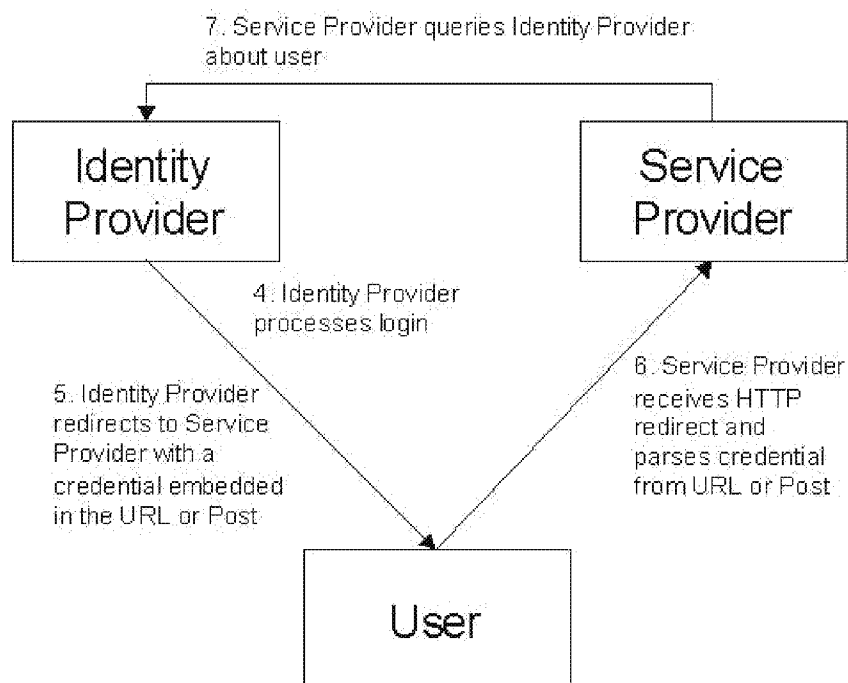


Figure 21. Single sign-on using HTTP redirect / form POST (2 of 2)

4.4.4. Interactions Between Identity Providers

In some cases, a Principal may have authenticated with one identity provider, but then be redirected to a second one by a service provider. This may occur either because that service provider has no direct trust relationship with the authenticating identity provider, some previously indicated preference to use the requested identity provider for single sign-on, or the user's direct choice.

If the requested identity provider trusts the authenticating identity provider then it may choose to use the Liberty protocols and profiles to initiate a single sign-on request of its own to that provider, the result of which will be used to generate a response to the originally-requesting service provider.

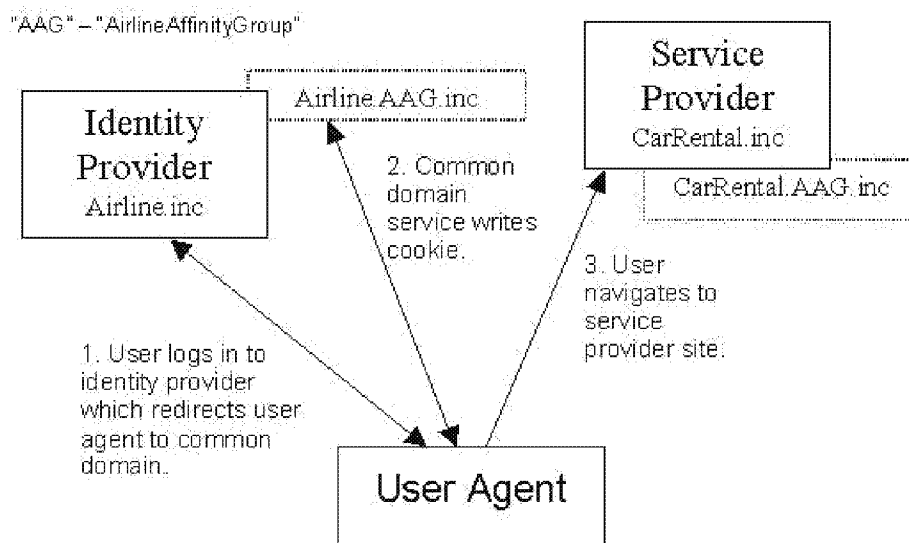
In so doing, the user may be relayed between more than one provider during a single sign-on transaction, in order to minimize the need for direct user interaction. An additional consequence is that service providers can be exposed to, but also take advantage of, identity providers that may be outside of their circles of trust. This more strongly models real world interactions between sites, and allows more flexible and convenient user interactions.

4.5. Principal Identity Provider Introduction

In circle of trusts having more than one identity provider, service providers need a means to discover which identity providers a user is using. Ideally, an identity provider could write a cookie that a service provider could read. However, due to the cookie constraint outlined in Section 4.1.3, an identity provider in one DNS domain has no standardized way to write a cookie that a service provider in another DNS domain can read.

A solution to this introduction problem is to use a domain common to the circle of trust in question and thus accessible to all parties, for example, AirlineAffinityGroup.inc or AAG.inc. Entries within this DNS domain will point to IP addresses specified by each affinity group member. For example, service provider CarRental.inc might receive a third-level domain "CarRental.AAG.inc" pointing to an IP address specified by CarRental.inc. The machines hosting this common domain service would be stateless. They would simply read and write cookies based on parameters passed within redirect URLs. This is one of several methods suggested for setting a common cookie in Section 3.6.2 of [LibertyBindProf].

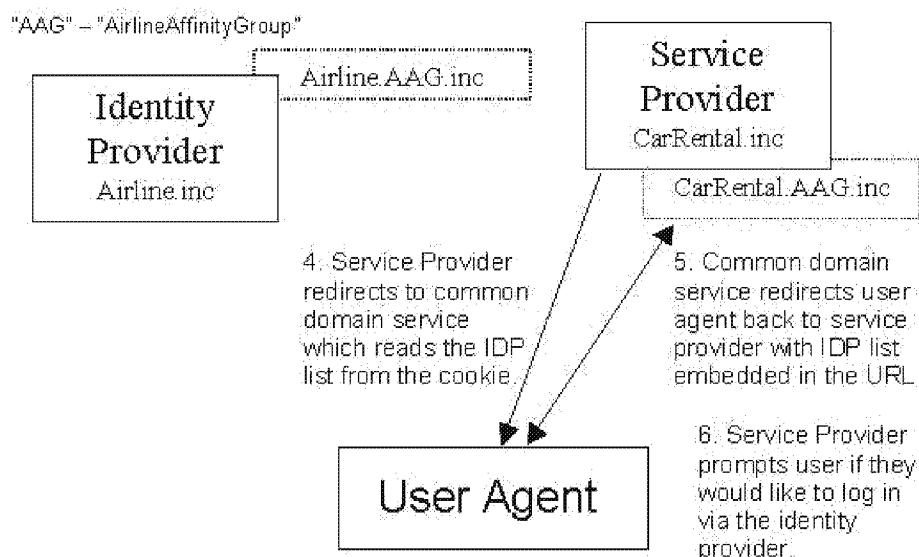
811 When a user authenticates with an identity provider, the identity provider would redirect the user's browser to the
 812 identity provider's instance of a common domain service with a parameter indicating that the user is using that identity
 813 provider. The common domain service writes a cookie with that preference and redirects the user's browser back to
 814 the identity provider. Then, the user can navigate to a service provider within the circle of trust. See Figure 22.



815

816 **Figure 22. Using a common domain to facilitate introductions (1 of 2)**

817 When the user navigates to a service provider within the circle of trust, the service provider can redirect the user's
 818 browser to its instance of the common domain service, which reads the cookie and redirects the user's browser back
 819 to the service provider with the user's identity provider embedded in the URL and thus available to service provider
 820 systems operating within the service provider's typical DNS domain. See Figure 23.



821

822 **Figure 23. Using a common domain to facilitate introductions (2 of 2)**

823 The service provider now knows with which identity provider the user has authenticated within its circle of trust and
 824 can engage in further Liberty protocol operations with that identity provider, for example, single sign-on, on the user's
 825 behalf.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Common Domain Cookie Implications: The identity provider can create either a session common domain cookie (for example, this session only; in practice having ephemeral behavior, see [RFC2965]) or a persistent common domain cookie. The implications with a session cookie are that it will disappear from the user agent cookie cache when the user logs out (although this action would have to be explicitly implemented) or when the user agent is exited. This feature may inconvenience some users. However, whether to use a session or a persistent cookie could be materialized to the user at identity provider login time in the form of a Remember Me checkbox. If not checked, a session cookie is used; if checked, a persistent one is used. A user security implication of the persistent cookie is that if another person uses the machine, even if the user agent had been exited, the persistent common domain cookie is still present—indeed all persistent cookies are present. See the policy/security note in Section 4.1.3. However, if the only information contained in a common domain cookie is a list of identity providers—that is, it does not contain any personally identifiable information or authentication information, then the resultant security risk to the user from inadvertent disclosure is low.

Common Domain Cookie Processing: The manner in which the common domain cookie writing service manipulates the common domain cookie is specified in 3.6.2 of [LibertyBindProf]. The identity provider with which the user most recently authenticated should be the last one in the list of identity providers in the cookie. However, the manner in which service providers interpret the common domain cookie and display choices to the user is unspecified. This lack of specificity implies that service providers may approach it in various ways. One way is to display identity providers in a list ordered in reverse to the order in the common domain cookie. This approach will nominally be in order of most-recently used if the common domain cookie writing service is adhering to the above guideline. Or, the service provider may display only the last identity provider in the list. Or the service provider may display the identity providers in some other order, if needed for some reason(s).

4.6. Single Logout

The Single Logout Protocol and related profiles synchronize session logout functionality across all sessions that were authenticated by a particular identity provider. The single logout can be initiated at either the identity provider (see Figure 24) or the service provider (see Figure 25). In either case, the identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider with which it has established a session for the user.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

When using a single sign-on system, it is critical that, when users log out at a service provider, their expectations are set about whether they are logging out from the identity provider or only that particular service provider. It may be necessary to provide both Single Logout and Site Logout buttons or links in Websites so that users' expectations are set. However, site logout may be regarded to come into play only where users have to take a positive action to use their current authentication assertion at a site that they have previously associated with their single sign-on.

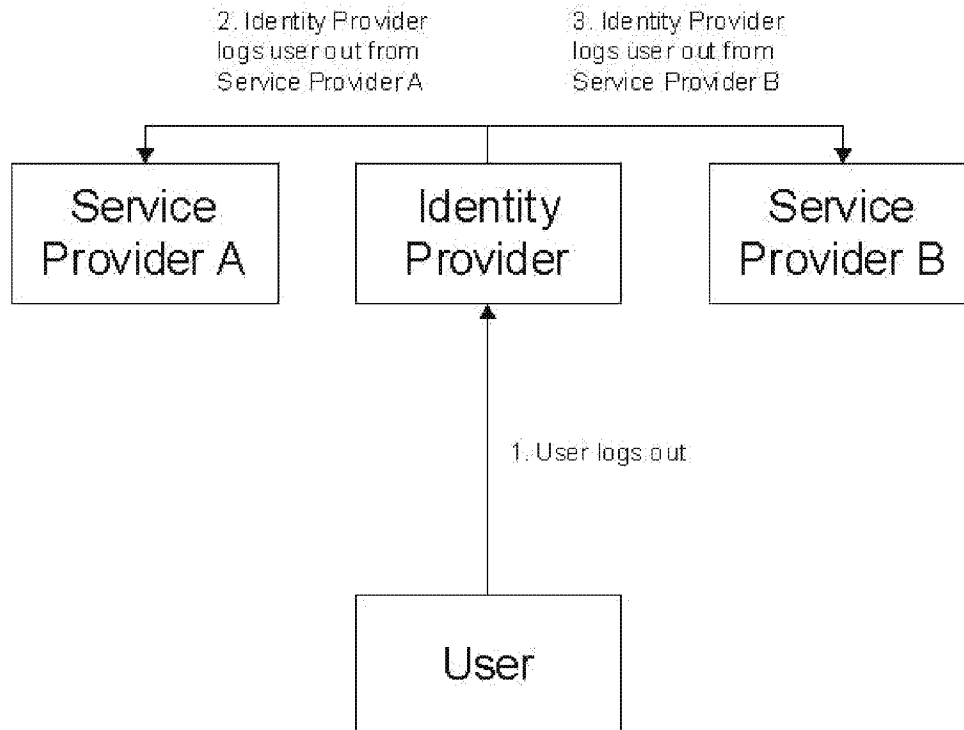


Figure 24. Single logout from an identity provider

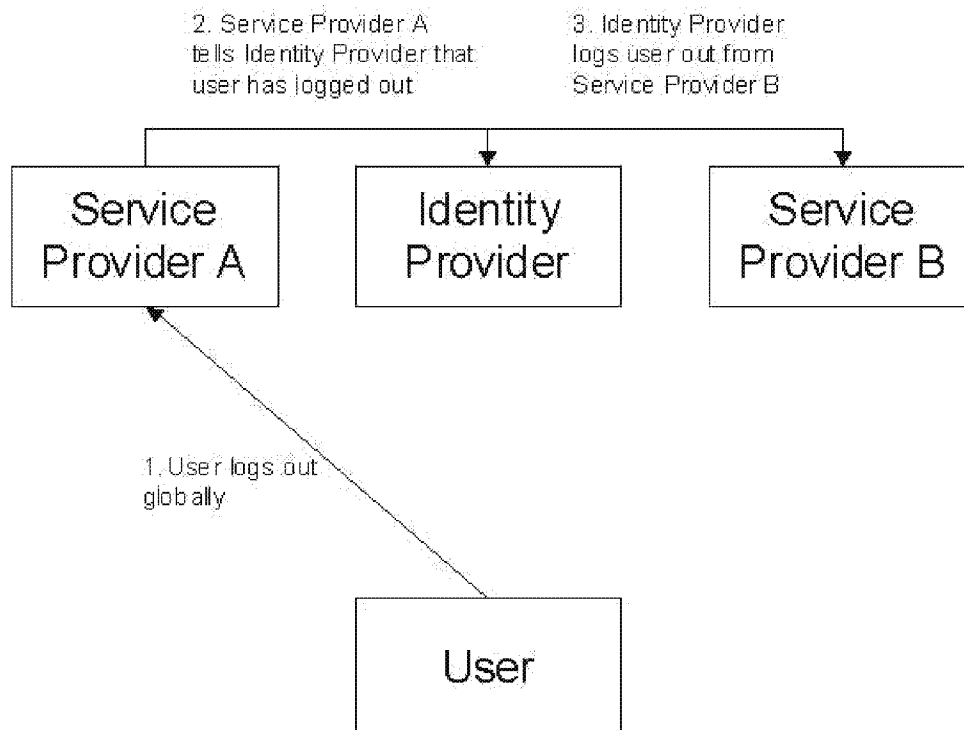


Figure 25. Single logout from a service provider

4.6.1. Single Logout Profiles

[LibertyBindProf] specifies three overall profiles for communicating the logout request among service providers and an identity provider:

- **HTTP-Redirect-Based:** on using HTTP 302 redirects
- **HTTP-GET-Based:** Relies on using HTTP GET requests of IMG tags
- **SOAP/HTTP-Based:** Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging

All three profiles may be initiated at an identity provider. Only the first and the last may be initiated at a service provider. See [LibertyBindProf] for details.

TECHNICAL NOTE:

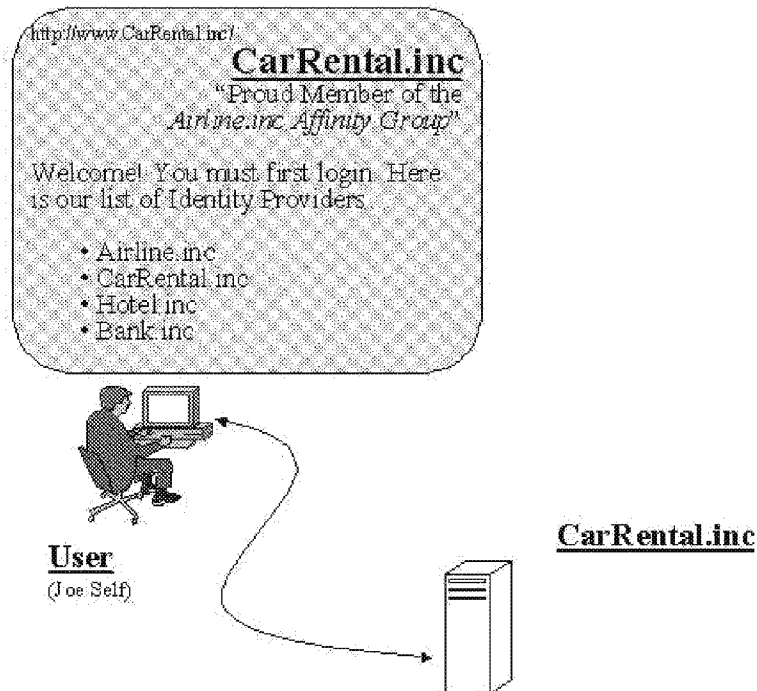
The user-perceivable salient difference between the single logout profiles is that with the HTTP-redirect-based and SOAP/HTTP-based profiles, the Webpage from which the user initiates the logout process will remain in place as the logout process occurs (that is, each service provider is contacted in turn), while with the HTTP-GET-based profile, the identity provider has the opportunity to reload images (one per service provider, for example, completion check marks) on the viewed Webpage as the logout process proceeds.

4.7. Example User Experience Scenarios

This section presents several example user experience scenarios based upon the federation, introduction, and single sign-on facets of the Liberty Version 1.2 architecture. The intent is to illustrate the more subtle aspects of the user experience at login time and to illustrate common Web-specific user interface techniques that may be employed in prompting for, and collecting, the user's credentials. Specific policy and security considerations are called out.

4.7.1. Scenario: Not Logged in Anywhere, No Common Domain Cookie

In this scenario, Joe Self is not logged in at any Website, does not have a common domain cookie (for example, he restarted his user agent and/or flushed the cookie cache), and surfs to CarRental.inc. without first visiting his identity provider, Airline.inc.



895

896 **Figure 26. User arrives at service provider's Website without any authentication evidence or common domain cookie**

897 CarRental.inc presents Joe Self with a welcome page listing identity providers from which he can select (see
 898 Figure 26). Joe Self selects Airline.inc from the list.

899 Section 4.7.1.1 through Section 4.7.1.3 illustrate three different, plausible, Web-specific user interface techniques
 900 CarRental.inc, working in concert with Airline.inc, may use to facilitate Joe Self's login:

- 901 • Redirect to identity provider Website
- 902 • Identity provider dialog box
- 903 • Embedded form

TECHNICAL NOTE:

These user interface techniques are commonly employed in Web-based systems. They are not particular to, or specified by, Liberty. They are presented for illustrative purposes only.

4.7.1.1. Login via Redirect to Identity Provider Website

With login via redirect to the identity provider's Website, service providers provide direct links, likely effected via redirects, to the identity provider's appropriate login page. Joe Self's browser will display an identity provider's Webpage (see Figure 27); and upon successful login, his browser will be redirected back to the service provider's Website where Joe Self will be provided access (see Figure 30).

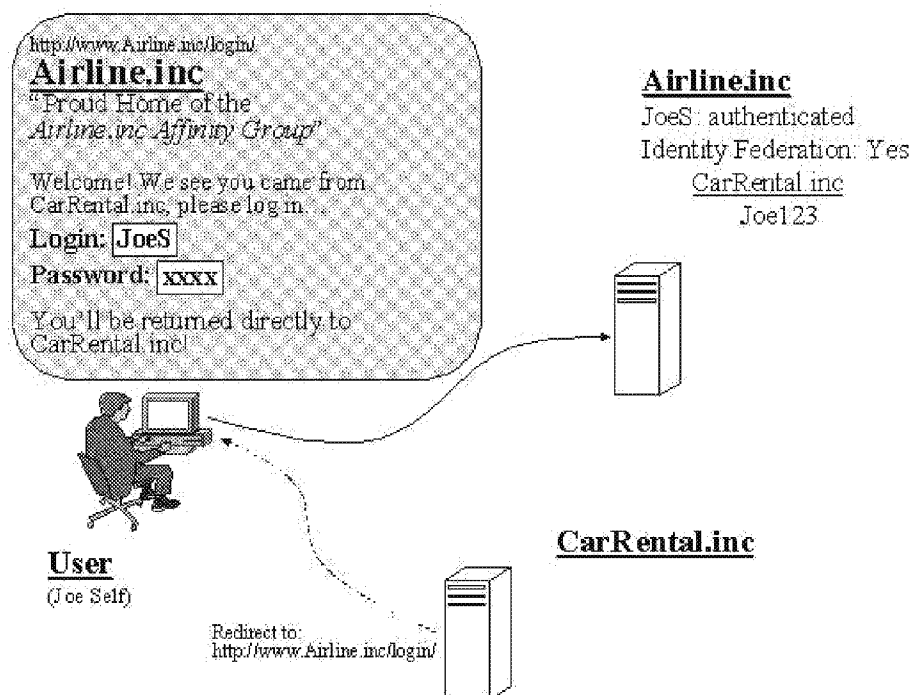


Figure 27. User arrives at service provider's Website without any authentication evidence or common domain cookie

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Service provider redirects to identity provider's login page.

4.7.1.2. Login via Identity Provider Dialog Box

With login via a dialog box from the identity provider, the links on the service provider's Webpage invoke a dialog or popup box. Joe Self's browser will display an identity provider popup (see Figure 28); and upon successful login, the popup box will close, and Joe Self will be provided access at the service provider's Website (see Figure 30).

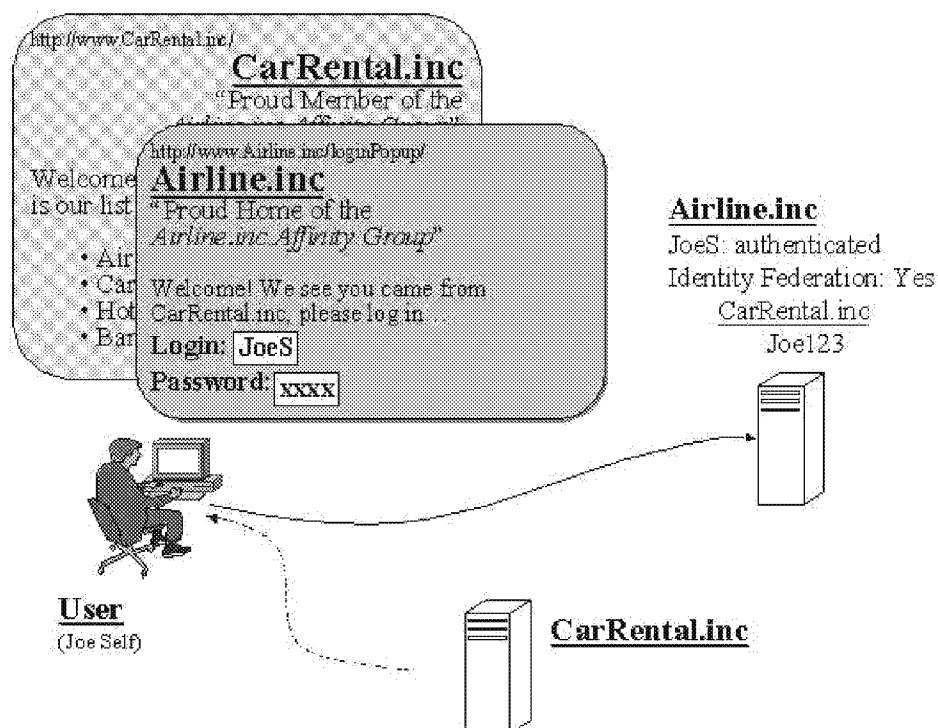


Figure 28. Service provider invokes dialog or popup box from identity provider.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Login via a dialog box from the identity provider is relatively secure in that the user reveals his credentials directly to the identity provider. Of course, the usual security considerations surrounding login and authentication events apply.

4.7.1.3. Login via Embedded Form

With login via embedded form, the links on the service provider's Webpage cause the service provider to display embedded login forms. In other words, the displayed page comes from the service provider, but when Joe Self presses the Submit button, the information is conveyed to the identity provider, typically via POST (see Figure 20). To Joe Self, it appears as if he has not left the service provider's Webpages. Upon successful login, Joe Self will be provided access at the service provider's Website (see Figure 30).

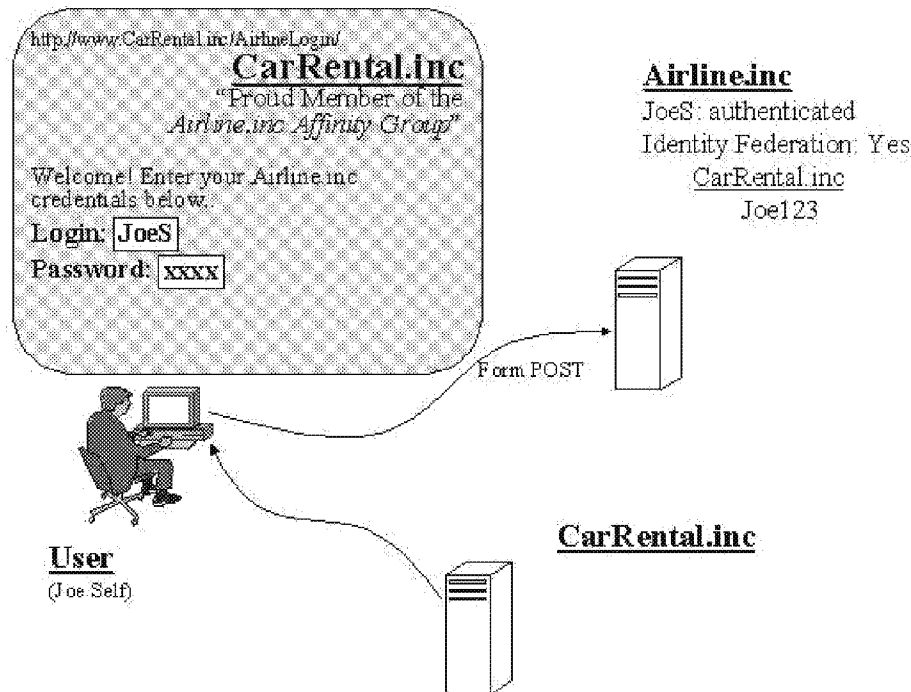


Figure 29. Login via embedded form

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Although users may like the seamlessness of this embedded form mechanism and deployers will like that the user does not leave their Website, it has serious policy and security considerations. In this mechanism, the user may be revealing his identity provider credentials to the service provider in cleartext. This is because the service provider controls the actual code implementing both the page and the embedded form and thus can conceivably capture users' credentials. In this way, privacy surrounding the user's identity provider account may be compromised by such a rogue service provider, who could then wield those credentials and impersonate the user. Because of this, when using authentication via embedded form, deployers may want to consider appropriate contract terms between identity providers and service providers to address this risk.

4.7.1.4. The User is Logged in at CarRental.inc

CarRental.inc and Airline.inc then work in conjunction to effect login, and the CarRental.inc Website establishes a session based upon Joe Self's identity federation with Airline.inc (see Figure 30).

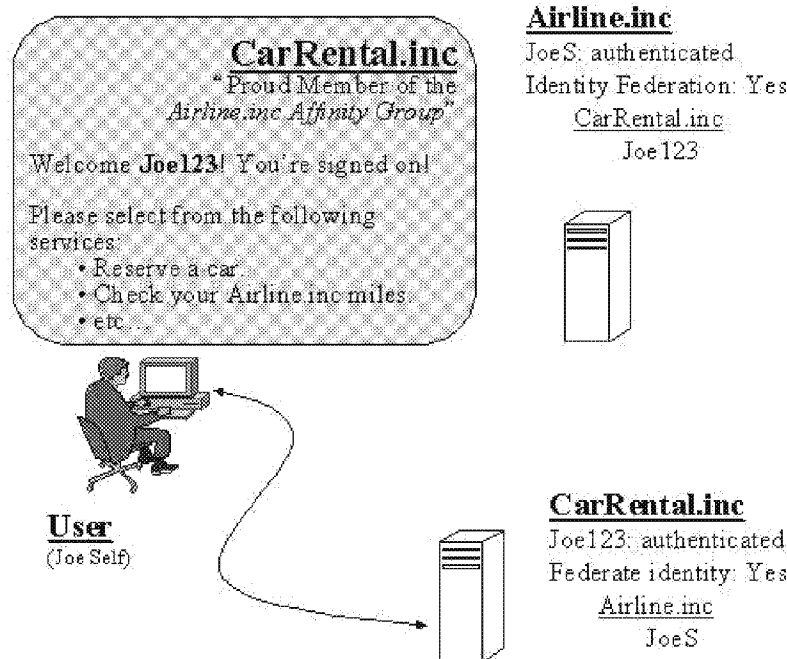


Figure 30. Login via embedded form

4.7.2. Scenario: Not Logged in Anywhere, Has a Common Domain Cookie

This scenario is similar the prior one. The only difference is that Joe Self's browser already has a common domain cookie cached. Therefore, when he arrives at a CarRental.inc Webpage, CarRental.inc will immediately know with which identity provider Joe Self is affiliated (Airline.inc in this case). It can immediately perform login via one of the three mechanisms outlined in the prior example or may prompt the user first.

POLICY/SECURITY NOTE:

Implementors and deployers should make allowance for the user to decide whether to immediately authenticate with the identity provider or be offered the chance to decline and authenticate either locally with the service provider or select from the service provider's list of affiliated identity providers.

4.7.3. Scenario: Logged in, Has a Common Domain Cookie

This scenario is illustrated in 2.2.

References

Informative

- [LibertyBindProf] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, Champagne, Darryl, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification," Version 1.2-errata-v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- [LibertyProtSchema] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version 1.2-errata-v3.0, Liberty Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- [LibertyAuthnContext] Madsen, Paul, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.3, Liberty Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- [LibertyMetadata] Davis, Peter, eds. "Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification," Version 1.1, Liberty Alliance Project (14 December 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- [LibertyGlossary] "Liberty Technical Glossary," Version 1.4, Liberty Alliance Project (14 Dec 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Hodges, Jeff, eds.
- [LibertyImplGuide] "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2, Liberty Alliance Project (18 April 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Thompson, Peter, Champagne, Darryl, eds.
- [SAMLBind] Mishra, Prateek, eds. (05 November 2002). "Bindings and Profiles for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML)," Version 1.0, OASIS Standard, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/security/#documents>
- [RFC1738] Berners-Lee, T., Masinter, L., McCahill, M., eds. (December 1994). "Uniform Resource Locators (URL)," RFC 1738., Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1738.txt> [December 1994].
- [RFC2119] Bradner, S., eds. "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels," RFC 2119, The Internet Engineering Task Force (March 1997). <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt> [March 1997].
- [RFC2965] Kristol, D., Montulli, L., eds. (October 2000). "HTTP State Management Mechanism," RFC 2965., Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2965.txt> [October 2000].
- [RFC2616] Fielding, R., Gettys, J., Mogul, J., Frystyk, H., Masinter, L., Leach, P., Berners-Lee, T., eds. (June 1999). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1," RFC 2616, The Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt> [June 1999].
- [RFC2396] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Masinter, L., eds. (August 1998). "Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax," RFC 2396, The Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt> [August 1998].
- [SOAPv1.1] "Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1," Box, Don, Ehnebuske, David, Kakivaya, Gopal, Layman, Andrew, Mendelsohn, Noah, Nielsen, Henrik, Frystyk, Winer, Dave, eds. World Wide Web Consortium W3C Note (08 May 2000). <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>

EXHIBIT 4

Liberty Alliance Project:

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0



Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification

Version: 1.2-errata-v2.0

Editors:

Scott Cantor, Internet2, The Ohio State University

John Kemp, IEEE-ISTO

Darryl Champagne, IEEE-ISTO

Contributors:

Robert Aarts, Nokia Corporation

Bronislav Kavan, RSA Security Inc.

Thomas Wason, IEEE-ISTO

Abstract:

Specification of the Liberty Alliance Project core profiles and bindings. This specification defines the bindings and profiles of the Liberty protocols and messages to HTTP-based communication frameworks. This specification relies on the SAML core framework in SAML Core V1.1 and makes use of adaptations of the SAML profiles in SAML Bindings V1.1.

Filename: draft-liberty-idff-bindings-profiles-1.2-errata-v2.0.pdf

Liberty Alliance Project

Defendant's Exhibit

DX-0382

IBM Corp. v. Groupon, Inc.
C.A. No. 1:16-cv-00122-LPS
USDC - D. Del.

Notice

This document has been prepared by Sponsors of the Liberty Alliance. Permission is hereby granted to use the document solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this document for other uses must contact the Liberty Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

Implementation of certain elements of this document may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The Sponsors of and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights. **This Specification is provided "AS IS", and no participant in the Liberty Alliance makes any warranty of any kind, express or implied, including any implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement of third party intellectual property rights, and fitness for a particular purpose.** Implementors of this Specification are advised to review the Liberty Alliance Project's website (<http://www.projectliberty.org/>) for information concerning any Necessary Claims Disclosure Notices that have been received by the Liberty Alliance Management Board.

Copyright © 2004 ActivCard; America Online, Inc.; American Express Travel Related Services; Axalto; Bank of America Corporation; Bell Canada; Cingular Wireless; Cisco Systems, Inc.; Communicator, Inc.; Deloitte & Touche LLP; Earthlink, Inc.; Electronic Data Systems, Inc.; Entrust, Inc.; Epok, Inc.; Ericsson; Fidelity Investments; France Telecom; Gemplus; General Motors; Hewlett-Packard Company; i2 Technologies, Inc.; Internet2; Intuit Inc.; MasterCard International; NEC Corporation; Netegrity, Inc.; NeuStar, Inc.; Nextel Communications; Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation; Nokia Corporation; Novell, Inc.; NTT DoCoMo, Inc.; OneName Corporation; Openwave Systems Inc.; Phaos Technology; Ping Identity Corporation; PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP; RegistryPro, Inc.; RSA Security Inc; Sabre Holdings Corporation; SAP AG; SchlumbergerSema; Sigaba; SK Telecom; Sony Corporation; Sun Microsystems, Inc.; Symlabs, Inc.; Trustgenix; United Airlines; VeriSign, Inc.; Visa International; Vodafone Group Plc; Wave Systems. All rights reserved.

Liberty Alliance Project
Licensing Administrator
c/o IEEE-ISTO
445 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, USA
info@projectliberty.org

31 **Contents**

32	1. Introduction	4
33	2. Protocol Bindings	5
34	3. Profiles	11
35	4. Security Considerations	62
36	References	69

1. Introduction

This specification defines the bindings and profiles of the Liberty protocols and messages to HTTP-based communication frameworks. This specification relies on the SAML core framework in [SAMLCore11] and makes use of adaptations of the SAML profiles in [SAMLBind11]. A separate specification, [LibertyProtSchema], is used to define the Liberty protocols and messages used within the profiles. Definitions for Liberty-specific terms can be found in [LibertyGlossary].

1.1. Notation

The key words "MUST," "MUST NOT," "REQUIRED," "SHALL," "SHALL NOT," "SHOULD," "SHOULD NOT," "RECOMMENDED," "MAY," and "OPTIONAL" in this specification are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119]: "they MUST only be used where it is actually required for interoperation or to limit behavior which has potential for causing harm (e.g., limiting retransmissions)."

These keywords are thus capitalized when used to unambiguously specify requirements over protocol and application features and behavior that affect the interoperability and security of implementations. When these words are not capitalized, they are meant in their natural-language sense.

Listings of productions or other normative code appear like this.

Example code listings appear like this.

Note:

Non-normative notes and explanations appear like this.

Conventional XML namespace prefixes are used throughout this specification to stand for their respective namespaces as follows, regardless of whether a namespace declaration is present in the example:

XML Namespace Conventions

- The prefix `lib:` stands for the Liberty namespace `urn:liberty:iff:2003-08`
- The prefix `saml:` stands for the SAML assertion namespace (see [SAMLCore]).
- The prefix `samlp:` stands for the SAML request-response protocol namespace (see [SAMLCore]).
- The prefix `ds:` stands for the W3C XML signature namespace, `http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#`
- The prefix `xenc:` stands for the W3C XML encryption namespace, `http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmenc#`
- The prefix `SOAP-ENV:` stands for the SOAP 1.1 namespace, `http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope` (see [SOAP1.1]).

Terminology from [RFC2396] is used to describe components of an HTTP URL. An HTTP URL has the following form:

`<scheme>://<authority><path>?<query>`

Sections in this document specify certain portions of the `<query>` component of the URL. Ellipses (...) are used to indicate additional, but unspecified, portions of the `<query>` component.

70 2. Protocol Bindings

71 The Liberty protocol bindings are defined in this section.

72 2.1. SOAP Binding for Liberty

73 The Liberty SOAP binding defines how to use SOAP to send and receive Liberty protocol requests and responses using
74 SOAP 1.1 messages.

75 Like Liberty, SOAP can be used over multiple underlying transports. This binding has protocol-independent aspects,
76 but REQUIRES the use of SOAP over HTTP.

77 2.1.1. Protocol-Independent Aspects of the Liberty SOAP Binding

78 The following sections define aspects of the Liberty SOAP binding that are independent of the underlying protocol,
79 such as HTTP, on which the SOAP messages are transported.

80 2.1.1.1. Basic Operation

81 SOAP messages consist of three elements: an envelope, header data, and a message body. Liberty request-response
82 protocol elements MUST be enclosed within the SOAP message body.

83 SOAP 1.1 also defines an optional data encoding system. This system is not used within the Liberty SOAP binding.
84 This means that SAML messages can be transported using SOAP without re-encoding from the "standard" Liberty
85 schemas to one based on the SOAP encoding.

86 The specific profile determines the type of messages that can be sent or received. The system model used for Liberty
87 conversations over SOAP may be a simple request-response model, or it may be a more complex interaction that
88 includes HTML forms or other input mechanisms that interact with a Principal.

89 This Liberty specification defines constraints. Liberty protocol messages MUST be sent as the top level element in
90 the SOAP body. The requester or responder MUST NOT include more than one Liberty protocol message in a single
91 SOAP message. The requester or responder MUST NOT include any additional XML elements in the SOAP body.
92 Additionally, if a SOAP fault code is returned, then no Liberty protocol message may appear in the SOAP body. SOAP
93 faults MUST only be used for signaling non-Liberty-related errors.

94 [SOAPv1.1] references an early draft of the XML Schema specification including an obsolete namespace. Originators
95 of Liberty SOAP messages SHOULD generate SOAP messages referencing only the final XML schema namespace.
96 Receivers of Liberty SOAP messages MUST be able to process both the XML schema namespace used in [SOAPv1.1]
97 and the final XML schema namespace.

98 2.1.1.2. SOAP Headers

99 A Liberty SOAP message MAY contain arbitrary headers added to the SOAP message. This binding does not define
100 any additional SOAP headers.

101 Liberty SOAP messages MUST NOT require that any headers be understood for correct interpretation of the message.

102 2.1.1.3. Authentication

103 Authentication of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. Authentication protocols
104 available from the underlying substrate protocol MAY be utilized to provide authentication. Section 2.1.2.1 describes
105 authentication in the SOAP-over-HTTP environment.

106 2.1.1.4. Message Integrity

107 Message integrity of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. The security layer
 108 in the underlying substrate protocol MAY be used to ensure message integrity. Section 2.1.2.2 describes support for
 109 message integrity in the SOAP-over-HTTP environment.

110 **2.1.1.5. Confidentiality**

111 Confidentiality of Liberty messages is OPTIONAL and depends on the environment of use. The security layer in the
 112 underlying substrate protocol MAY be used to ensure message confidentiality. Section 2.1.2.3 describes support for
 113 confidentiality in the SOAP over HTTP environment.

114 **2.1.2. Use of SOAP over HTTP**

115 This section describes certain specifics of using SOAP over HTTP, including HTTP headers, error reporting,
 116 authentication, message integrity and confidentiality.

117 The HTTP binding for SOAP is described in [SOAPv1.1] §6.0. It requires the use of a SOAPAction header as part of
 118 a SOAP HTTP request. Processing of a Liberty message MUST NOT depend on the value of this header. A Liberty
 119 message MAY set the value of its SOAPAction header as follows:

```
120
121     urn:liberty:soap-action
122
123
```

124 **2.1.2.1. Authentication**

125 Liberty SOAP message endpoints MUST implement the following authentication methods:

- 126 1. No client or server authentication.
- 127 2. HTTP basic client authentication [RFC2617] with and without SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0.
- 128 3. HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 (see Section 6) server authentication with a server-side certificate.
- 129 4. HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 client authentication with a client-side certificate.

130 If a message receiver uses SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0, it MUST use a server-side certificate.

131 **2.1.2.2. Message Integrity**

132 When message integrity needs to be guaranteed, messages MUST be sent with HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 with a
 133 server-side certificate.

134 **2.1.2.3. Message Confidentiality**

135 When message confidentiality is required, messages MUST be sent with HTTP over SSL 3.0 or TLS 1.0 with a
 136 server-side certificate.

137 **2.1.2.4. Security Considerations**

138 Before deployment in a given profile, each combination of authentication, message integrity and confidentiality
 139 mechanisms SHOULD be analyzed for vulnerability in the context of the profile.

140 [RFC2617] describes possible attacks in the HTTP environment when basic or message-digest authentication schemes
 141 are used.

142 **2.1.2.5. Error Reporting**

143 A message receiver that refuses to perform a message exchange SHOULD return a "403 Forbidden" response. In this
144 case, the content of the HTTP body is not significant.

145 As described in [SOAPv1.1] § 6.2, in the case of a SOAP error while processing a SOAP request, the SOAP HTTP
146 server MUST return a "500 Internal Server Error" response and include a SOAP message in the response with a SOAP
147 fault element. This type of error SHOULD be returned for SOAP-related errors detected before control is passed to
148 the Liberty message processor, or when the SOAP processor reports an internal error (for example, the SOAP XML
149 namespace is incorrect).

150 In the case of a Liberty processing error, the SOAP HTTP server MUST respond with "200 OK" and include a profile-
151 specified response as the only child of the <SOAP-ENV:Body> element.

152 2.1.2.6. Example of Message Exchange Using SOAP over HTTP

153 The following is an example of the SOAP exchange for the single sign-on browser artifact profile requesting an
154 authentication assertion (the left margin white space added for legibility invalidates the signature).

```
155
156 POST /authn HTTP/1.1
157 Host: idp.example.com
158 Content-type: text/xml
159 Content-length: nnnn
160 <soap-env:Envelope
161   xmlns:soap-env="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
162   <soap-env:Header/>
163   <soap-env:Body>
164     <samlp:Request xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
165       xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:iff:2003-08"
166       xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:assertion"
167       xmlns:samlp="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
168       xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
169       IssueInstant="2002-12-12T10:08:56Z"
170       MajorVersion="1"
171       MinorVersion="1"
172       RequestID="e4d71c43-c89a-426b-853e-a2b0c14a5ed8"
173       Id="ericssonb6dc3636-f2ad-42d1-9427-220f2cf70ec1">
174     <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
175       <ds:SignedInfo>
176         <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
177           Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
178         </ds:CanonicalizationMethod>
179         <ds:SignatureMethod
180           Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1">
181         </ds:SignatureMethod>
182         <ds:Reference URI="#ericssonb6dc3636-f2ad-42d1-9427-220f2cf70ec1">
183           <ds:Transforms>
184             <ds:Transform
185               Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature">
186             </ds:Transform>
187             <ds:Transform
188               Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
189             </ds:Transform>
190           </ds:Transforms>
191           <ds:DigestMethod
192             Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1">
193           </ds:DigestMethod>
194           <ds:DigestValue>+k6Tno`Gk`PKZ` pUQVyoKfdwkuR=</ds:DigestValue>
195         </ds:Reference>
196       </ds:SignedInfo>
197       <ds:SignatureValue>
198         wXJMVCFO1V1jFnWJPYONqPbGqm8A1+/2bBgNzF4L4LMu4yEoRtttLdPPT3hvhkwllXjL9Nu0FnmQ
199         bYFyiVz1NcjAxX0LfgwutvEdJb/48IU4Ll8obXPXfqTzLiBX1Rb1C3RmRvj1PIu22cGCV6Ewu iWRv
200         OD6Ox9svtSgFJ1iXkZQ
201       </ds:SignatureValue>
```

```

231 HTTP/1.1 200 OK
232 Content-Type: text/xml
233 Content-Length: 1111
234 <soap-env:Envelope
235   xmlns:soap-env="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
236   <soap-env:Header/>
237   <soap-env:Body>
238     <samlp:Response
239       xmlns:samlp="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
240       InResponseTo="RPCUk211+GVz+t11LURp51oFvJXk"
241       IssueInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z" MajorVersion="1" MinorVersion="1"
242       Recipient="http://localhost:8080/sp"
243       ResponseID="LANWfL2xLybnc+BCwgY+pl/vIVAj">
244       <samlp:Status>
245         <samlp:StatusCode
246           xmlns:qns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol"
247           Value="qns:Success">
248         </samlp:StatusCode>
249       </samlp:Status>
250       <saml:Assertion
251         xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:assertion"
252         xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#"
253         xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:iff:2003-08"
254         xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
255         AssertionID="SqMC8Hs2vC77+t4UifSmhKOST00U"
256         InResponseTo="RPCUk211+GVz+t11LURp51oFvJXk"
257         IssueInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z" Issuer="http://localhost:8080/idp"
258         MajorVersion="1" MinorVersion="2"
259         xsi:type="lib:AssertionType">
260         <saml:Conditions
261           NotBefore="2002-10-31T21:42:12Z"
262           NotOnOrAfter="2002-10-31T21:42:43Z">
263         <saml:AudienceRestrictionCondition>
264           <saml:Audience>http://localhost:8080/sp</saml:Audience>
265         </saml:AudienceRestrictionCondition>

```

```

267     </saml:Conditions>
268     <saml:AuthenticationStatement
269       AuthenticationInstant="2002-10-31T21:42:13Z"
270       AuthenticationMethod="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:am:password"
271       xsi:type="lib:AuthenticationStatementType">
272       <saml:Subject xsi:type="lib:SubjectType">
273         <saml:NameIdentifier Format="urn:liberty:iff:nameid:federated">
274           C9FfGouQdBJ7bpkismYgd8ygeVb3P1WK
275         </saml:NameIdentifier>
276         <saml:SubjectConfirmation>
277           <saml:ConfirmationMethod>
278             urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:cm:artifact
279           </saml:ConfirmationMethod>
280         </saml:SubjectConfirmation>
281         <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
282           C9FfGouQdBJ7bpkismYgd8ygeVb3P1WK
283         </lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
284       </saml:Subject>
285     </saml:AuthenticationStatement>
286     <ds:Signature>
287       <ds:SignedInfo>
288         <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
289           Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
290         </ds:CanonicalizationMethod>
291         <ds:SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1">
292         </ds:SignatureMethod>
293         <ds:Reference URI="">
294           <ds:Transforms>
295             <ds:Transform
296               Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature">
297             </ds:Transform>
298             <ds:Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
299             </ds:Transform>
300           </ds:Transforms>
301           <ds:DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1">
302           </ds:DigestMethod>
303           <ds:DigestValue>7bscbqHTX9H8bBftRTWLG4Fov1A</ds:DigestValue>
304         </ds:Reference>
305       </ds:SignedInfo>
306       <ds:SignatureValue>
307         II-q3nC3jUaljlUUVKcC4iTFClxeZQITF0nvHqPS5oZhtkBaDh9qITA7gIkotaB584wXqTXwsfsu
308         rWcbuL3r8bRj/IF6NeCeiY3R0+z3uewxyeZPz8wna449VNmUgNIIYkgNak9ViNCp0/ksbMAAttoPo
309         2iLOfaRu3wWG6d1GIDM=
310       </ds:SignatureValue>
311     </ds:Signature>
312   </saml:Assertion>
313 </samlp:Response>
314 </soap-env:body>
315 </soap-env:Envelope>

```

316 2.1.2.7. Example of Message Exchange Using URL-encoding

```

317 http://127.0.0.1:8080/tfsidf/ICPSingleSignOnServiceV12?
318 RequestID=ddd4aa20-24d4-4366-8f6c-7bb0e068334a&MajorVersion=1
319 &MinorVersion=2&IssueInstant=2005-07-26T05:3A44:3A00Z
320 &ProviderID=http%3A%2F%2F127.0.0.1%3A8081%2Ftfsidf
321 &NameIDPolicy=none&IsPassive=0
322 &RelayState=3f53f0934a63726de06f555493682e131ad131ff
323 &SigAlg=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.w3.org%2F2000%2F09%2Fxmldsig%23rsa-sha1
324 &Signature=
325   XAfiiHlyI8OJG6IGV6Yl7ToaxwF1E4wv%2FronqAkkCllKyxvjco3%2Bitx7Q44v
326   RVDm%2BbAr38ofFSsb%0AbzYsWgTMAIDPsm2wQUuYP2oRB9AAs%2BdzwfGWhqV%
327   2FU0malW7cRMDBA2ewyAQTdiALLesetQ6zAnJ%0A4KzHEXq1%2BzelPehsWOE%3D
328
329

```

330 **Example 1. URL-encoded <AuthnRequest>**

331
332 http://127.0.0.1:8081/tfssp/SPAssertionConsumerServiceV2?
333 SAMLart=AAMZf3s1j11R%23gQe%23MVfP6f1shoGal'G1XrZG6E%2B212nHDCxF'A7h%2BDcE%2B
334 &RelayState=3f53f0934%63728de06f555493683e131ad131ff
335

336 **Example 2. URL-encoded <AuthnResponse>**

337 **3. Profiles**

338 This section defines the Liberty profiles for the use of request and response messages defined in [LibertyProtSchema]
 339 and [SAMLCore11]. The combination of message content specification and message transport mechanisms for a
 340 single client type (that is, user agent) is termed a *Liberty profile*. The profiles have been grouped into categories
 341 according to the protocol message intent.

342 The following profile categories are defined in this document:

- 343 • **Single Sign-On and Federation:** The profiles by which a service provider obtains an authentication assertion
 344 from an identity provider facilitating single sign-on and identity federation.
- 345 • **Name Registration:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers specify the name identifier to
 346 be used when communicating with each other about the Principal.
- 347 • **Federation Termination Notification:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers are notified
 348 of federation termination.
- 349 • **Single Logout:** The profiles by which service providers and identity providers are notified of authenticated
 350 session termination.
- 351 • **Identity Provider Introduction:** The profile by which a service provider discovers which identity providers a
 352 Principal may be using.
- 353 • **Name Identifier Mapping:** The profile by which a service provider may obtain a NameIdentifier with which to
 354 refer to a Principal at a SAML Authority.
- 355 • **Name Identifier Encryption:** The profile by which one provider may encrypt a NameIdentifier to permit it to pass
 356 through a third-party without revealing the actual value until received by the intended provider.

357 **3.1. Common Requirements**

358 The following rules apply to all profiles in this specification, unless otherwise noted by the individual profile.

- 359 1. All HTTP requests and responses MUST be drawn from either HTTP 1.1 (see [RFC2616]) or HTTP 1.0 (see
 360 [RFC1945]). When an HTTP redirect is specified, the HTTP response MUST have a status code of "302."
 361 According to HTTP 1.1 and HTTP 1.0, the use of status code 302 is recommended to indicate "the requested
 362 resource resides temporarily under a different URI." The response may also include additional headers and an
 363 optional message.
- 364 2. When `https` is specified as the `<scheme>` for a URL, the HTTP connection MUST be made over either SSL 3.0
 365 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246]) or any subsequent protocols that are backwards compatible with SSL 3.0
 366 and/or TLS 1.0. Other security protocols MAY be used as long as they implement equivalent security measures.
- 367 3. Messages between providers MUST have their integrity protected, confidentiality MUST be ensured and the
 368 recipient MUST authenticate the sender.
- 369 4. Providers MUST use secure transport (`https`) to achieve confidentiality and integrity protection. The initiator of
 370 the secure connection MUST authenticate the server using server-side X.509 certificates.

- 371 5. The authenticated identity of an identity provider MUST be securely available to a Principal before the Principal
372 presents his/her personal authentication data to that identity provider.
- 373 6. Certificates and private keys MUST be suitable for long-term signatures. See [LibertyProtSchema] for guidelines
374 on signature verification. For signing and verification of protocol messages, identity and service providers
375 SHOULD use certificates and private keys that are distinct from the certificates and private keys applied for
376 SSL or TLS channel protection.
- 377 7. In transactions between service providers and identity providers, requests MUST be protected against replay, and
378 received responses MUST be checked for correct correspondence with issued requests. (**Note:** Other steps may
379 intervene between the issuance of a request and its eventual response within a multistep transaction involving
380 redirections.) Additionally, time-based assurance of freshness MAY be provided.
- 381 8. Each service provider within a circle of trust MUST be configured to enable identification of the identity providers
382 whose authentications it will accept. Each identity provider MUST be configured to enable identification of the
383 service providers it intends to serve.
384 **Note:**
385 The format of this configuration is a local matter and could, for example, be represented as lists of names or as
386 sets of X.509 certificates of other circle of trust members.
- 387 9. Circle of trust bilateral agreements on selecting certificate authorities, obtaining X.509 credentials, establishing
388 and managing trusted public keys, and tracking lifecycles of corresponding credentials are assumed and not in
389 scope for this specification.
- 390 10. The <scheme> of the URL for SOAP endpoints MUST be https.
- 391 11. All SOAP message exchanges MUST adhere to the SOAP protocol binding for Liberty (see Section 2.1).

392 3.1.1. User Agent

393 Unless otherwise noted in the specific profile, a user agent MUST support the following features to be interoperable
394 with the protocols in [LibertyProtSchema] and Liberty profiles in this document:

- 395 • HTTP 1.0 (see [RFC1945]) or HTTP 1.1 (see [RFC2616]).
- 396 • SSL 3.0 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246]) or any subsequent protocols which are backwards compatible
397 with SSL 3.0 and/or TLS 1.0 either directly or via a proxy (for example, a WAP gateway).
- 398 • Minimum maximum URL length of 256 bytes. See [LibertyGlossary] for definition.
- 399 • A WAP browser user agent MUST support WML 1.0, 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 [WML] in addition to the above requirements.

400 Additionally, to support the optional identity provider introduction profile, either the user agent or a proxy must
 401 support session cookies (see [RFC2965]). The issue of using persistent cookies or session-length cookies is discussed
 402 in [LibertyImplGuide].

403 3.1.2. Formatting and Encoding of Protocol Messages

404 All protocol messages that are indicated by the profile as being communicated in the `<query>` component of the URL
 405 MUST adhere to the formatting and encoding rules in Section 3.1.2.1.

406 3.1.2.1. Encoding URL-embedded Messages

407 URL-embedded messages are encoded using the `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` MIME type as if they
 408 were generated from HTML forms with the GET method as defined in [HTML4].

409 The original XML protocol message MUST be encoded as follows:

410 • The `<query>` component parameter value MUST be the value of the XML protocol message element or attribute
 411 value.

412 • The value of the `<query>` component parameter MUST be a space-delimited list when the original message
 413 element has multiple values.

414 • Some of the referenced protocol message elements and attributes are optional. If an optional element or attribute
 415 does not appear in the original XML protocol message, then the corresponding data item MUST be omitted from
 416 the URL encoded message.

417 • URI.s appearing in the URI-encoded message SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length (including %-escaping
 418 overhead). Likewise, the `<lib:RelayState>` data value SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length.

419 • The URL-encoding of status codes in the responses `RegisterNameIdentifierResponse` and
 420 `LogoutResponse` may be taken from several sources. The top level codes MUST be from SAML.
 421 Other codes (including Liberty-defined values) MAY be used at the second or lower levels. The URL parameter
 422 value should be interpreted as a QName with the "lib", "saml", and "samlp" namespaces pre-defined to their
 423 respective namespace URIs. Query parameters with the name "xmlns:prefix" can be used to map additional
 424 namespace prefixes for the purpose of QName resolution, so long as the `xmlns:prefix` URL parameter appears
 425 before the URI parameter containing the QName which needs the prefix definition.

426 As `<samlp:StatusCode>` elements may be nested hierarchically (see [[SAMLCore11]], there may exist
 427 multiple values for `<samlp:StatusCode>` in the response messages. These multiple values MUST be encoded by
 428 producing a URL-encoded space-separated string as the value of this query parameter. An example is as follows:

429 `Value=samlp:3AResponder%20lib:3AFederationDoesNotExist`
 430
 431

432 • Certain XML protocol messages support extensibility via an `<Extension>` element. Messages that are to be
 433 URI-encoded MUST adhere to the following restrictions when including extension content:

434 • Only attribute values and elements with simple content models are permitted.

435 • All attributes and elements MUST have an empty namespace and MUST have unique local names.

436 • Each value included SHOULD NOT exceed 80 bytes in length (including encoding overhead).

437 XML digital signatures are not directly URL-encoded due to space concerns. If the Liberty XML protocol message is
 438 signed with an XML signature, the encoded URL form of the message MUST be signed as follows:

-
- 439 • Include the signature algorithm identifier as a new <query> component parameter named SigAlg, but omit the
440 signature.
- 441 • Sign the string containing the URL-encoded message. The string to be signed MUST include only the <query>
442 part of the URL (that is, everything after ? and before &Signature=). Any required URL-escaping MUST be
443 done before signing.
- 444 • Encode the signature using base64 (see [RFC2045]).
- 445 • Add the base64-encoded signature to the encoded message as a new data item named Signature.
- 446 Note that some characters in the base64-encoded signature value may require URL escaping before insertion into the
447 URL <query> part, as is the case for any other data item value.
- 448 Any items added after the Signature <query> component parameter are implicitly unsigned.
- 449 The service URL provided by the provider (the URL to which <query> parameters are added) MUST NOT contain
450 any pre-existing <query> parameter values.
- 451 The following signature algorithms (i.e., DSAwithSHA1, RSAwithSHA1) and their identifiers (the URIs) MUST be
452 supported:
- 453 • DSAwithSHA1 - <http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#dsa-sha1>
- 454 • RSAwithSHA1 - <http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1>

455 3.1.2.1.1. Size Limitations

456 When the request initiator knows or suspects that the user agent cannot process the full URL-encoded message in the
457 URL due to size considerations, the requestor MAY send the Liberty XML protocol message using a form POST.
458 The form MUST be constructed with contents that contain the field LAREQ or LARES with the respective value being
459 the Liberty XML protocol request or response message (e.g., <lib:AuthnRequest> or <lib:AuthnResponse>) as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The Liberty XML protocol message MUST be encoded by applying a base64
460 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the XML message and all its elements.

462 3.1.2.1.2. URL-encoded <lib:AuthnRequest>

463 The original <lib:AuthnRequest> message:

```

464
465       <lib:AuthnRequest RequestID="[RequestID]"
466           MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
467           MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
468           IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
469           consent="[consent]">
470         <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
471         <lib:AffiliationID>[AffiliationID]</lib:AffiliationID>
472         <lib:ForceAuthn>[ForceAuthn]</lib:ForceAuthn>
473         <lib:IsPassive>[IsPassive]</lib:IsPassive>
474         <lib:NameIDPolicy>[NameIDPolicy]</lib:NameIDPolicy>
475         <lib:ProtocolProfile>[ProtocolProfile]</lib:ProtocolProfile>
476         <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceID>[AssertionConsumerServiceID]
477         </lib:AssertionConsumerServiceID>
478         <lib:AuthnContext>
479           <lib:AuthnContextStatementRef>[AuthnContextStatementRef]
480           </lib:AuthnContextStatementRef>
481         </lib:AuthnContext>
482         <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
483         <lib:AuthnContextComparison>[AuthnContextComparison]</lib:AuthnContextComparison>

```

```

484         <lib:Scoping>
485             <lib:ProxyCount>[ProxyCount] </lib:ProxyCount>
486             <lib:IDPList>
487                 <lib:IDPEntries>[IDPEntries] </lib:IDPEntries>
488                 <lib:GetComplete>[GetComplete] </lib:GetComplete>
489             </lib:IDPList>
490         </lib:Scoping>
491     </lib:AuthnRequest>

```

- 492 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 493 present in the original message:

```

494
495 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, ProviderID, AffiliationID, ForceAuthn,
496 IsPassive, NameIDPolicy, ProtocolProfile, AuthnContextStatementRef, AuthnContextClassRef,
497 AuthnContextComparison, RelayState, ProxyCount, IDPEntries, GetComplete, consent.

```

- 498 • The <IDPEntries> element may contain multiple <IDPEntity> elements, each of which may contain multiple
 499 pieces of data (<ProviderID>, <ProviderName> and <Loc>). The <IDPEntries> element MUST be
 500 URL-encoded by taking only the <ProviderID> element from each individual <IDPEntity> element, and
 501 concatenating them in a space-separated string, as in the following example:

```

502 ... &IDPEntries=http%3A%2F%2Fidpl.com%2Fliberty%2F%20http%3A%2F%2Fidp2.com%2Fliberty%2F ...
503

```

504 The recipient of such a URL-encoded list of <ProviderID> elements may obtain the remainder of the information
 505 present in the original <IDPEntity> by accessing metadata for the individual providers referenced in the URL-
 506 encoded list.

- 507 • Example of <lib:AuthnRequest> message URL-encoded and signed:

```

508
509 http://idp.example.com/authn?RequestID=RMvY34pg%2FV9aGU5yw0HL0AocjqQF
510 &MajorVersion=1&MinorVersion=2&IssueInstant=2002-05-15T00%3A58%3A19
511 &consent=urn%3Aliberty%3Aconsent%3Aobtained&ProviderID=http%3A%2F%2Fsp.example.com%2Fliberty%2F
512
513 &ForceAuthn=true&IsPassive=false&NameIDPolicy=federatec
514 &ProtocolProfile=http%3A%2F%2Fprojectliberty.org%2Fprofiles%2Fbrws-post
515 http%3A%2F%2Fwww.projectliberty.org%2Fschemas%2Fauthctx%2Fclasses%2FPasswordProtectedTransport
516 &RelayState=03mhak5ms5tMQ0WRDCEzpF7BNcywZa75FwIcSSE PvbkoFxaQHCUnc5yChId
517 DLkc7JBV9Xbw3avRBK7VFsPl2X
518 &SigAlg=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.w3.org%2F2000%2F09%2Fxmldsig%23rsa-sha1
519 &Signature=EoD8bNz2jEOe%2Fumon6oU%2FZGIIF7gbJAe4MLUUMzD%2B%27P8Yf3gfdzG2qJdNAJkzVHGfO8W8Dzpq
520 %0D%0AsEITtd5VP9MLPcvxbFQoF0CJJmVL26cPsc54q7oJrcFCjJ%2F2CkDc4DALYlZ5kPIq%2BtrykqLz0U%2BS%0D%
521 0ANqcNHkjH6W3YkGv7%2BS%3D

```

522 3.1.2.1.3. URL-Encoded <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>

523 The original <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> message:

```

524
525 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification ...
526     RequestID="[RequestID]"
527     MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
528     MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
529     IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
530     consent="[consent]"
531 <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID] </lib:ProviderID>
532 <saml:NameIdentifier
533     NameQualifier="[NameQualifier]"
534     Format="[NameFormat]">[NameIdentifier] </saml:NameIdentifier>
535 </lib:FederationTerminationNotification>
536

```

537 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
538 present in the original message:

539
540 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, ProviderID, NameQualifier, NameFormat,
541 NameIdentifier, consent.

542 3.1.2.1.4. URL-Encoded <lib:LogoutRequest>

543 The original <lib:LogoutRequest> message:

```
544
545 <lib:LogoutRequest ...
546   RequestID="[RequestID]"
547   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
548   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
549   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
550   consent="[consent]">
551   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
552   <saml:NameIdentifier
553     NameQualifier="[NameQualifier]"
554     Format="[NameFormat]">
555     [NameIdentifier]
556   </saml:NameIdentifier>
557   <lib:SessionIndex>[SessionIndex]</lib:SessionIndex>
558   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
559 </lib:LogoutRequest>
```

560 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
561 present in the original message:

562
563 RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant,
564 ProviderID, NameQualifier, NameFormat, NameIdentifier,
565 SessionIndex, RelayState, consent.

566 3.1.2.1.5. URL-Encoded <lib:LogoutResponse>

567 The <lib:LogoutResponse> response message:

```
568
569 <lib:LogoutResponse
570   ResponseID="[ResponseID]"
571   InResponseTo="[InResponseTo]"
572   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
573   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
574   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
575   Recipient="[Recipient]">
576 <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
577 <samlp:Status>
578   <samlp:StatusCode Value="[Value]" />
579 </samlp:Status>
580 <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
581 </lib:LogoutResponse>
```

582 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
583 present in the original message:

584
585 ResponseID, InResponseTo, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant, Recipient, ProviderID,
586 Value, RelayState.

- 587 • The <lib:LogoutResponse> message may contain nested status code information. Multiple values MUST be
588 URL-encoded by creating a space-separated list (see general requirements at top of Section 3.1.2.1.5).

589 3.1.2.1.6. URL-Encoded <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>

590 The original <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> message:

```
591
592 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest
593   RequestID="[RequestID]"
594   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
595   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
596   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]">
597   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
598   <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier
599     NameQualifier="[IDPNameQualifier]"
600     Format="[IDPNameFormat]">[IDPProvidedNameIdentifier]
601   </lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>
602   <lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier
603     NameQualifier="[SPNameQualifier]"
604     Format="[SPNameFormat]">[SPPProvidedNameIdentifier]
605   </lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier>
606   <lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier
607     NameQualifier="[OldNameQualifier]"
608     Format="[OldNameFormat]">[OldProvidedNameIdentifier]
609   </lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier>
610   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
611 </lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>
612
```

- 613 • Data elements that MUST be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
614 present in the original message:

```
615
616   RequestID, MajorVersion, MinorVersion, IssueInstant,
617   ProviderID, IDPNameQualifier, IDPNameFormat, IDPProvidedNameIdentifier,
618   SPNameQualifier, SPNameFormat, SPPProvidedNameIdentifier,
619   OldNameQualifier, OldNameFormat, OldProvidedNameIdentifier,
620   RelayState
```

621 3.1.2.1.7. URL-Encoded <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>

622 The <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> response message:

```
623
624 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse
625   ResponseID="[ResponseID]"
626   InResponseTo="[InResponseTo]"
627   MajorVersion="[MajorVersion]"
628   MinorVersion="[MinorVersion]"
629   IssueInstant="[IssueInstant]"
630   Recipient="[Recipient]">
631   <lib:ProviderID>[ProviderID]</lib:ProviderID>
632   <samlp:Status>
633     <samlp:StatusCode Value="[Value]" />
634   </samlp:Status>
635   <lib:RelayState>[RelayState]</lib:RelayState>
636 </lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>
637
```

- 638 • Data elements that **MUST** be included in the encoded data with their values as indicated in brackets above if
 639 present in the original message:
 640
 641 `ResponseID, InResponseTo, MajorVersion, MinorVersion,`
 642 `IssueInstant, Recipient, ProviderID, Value, RelayState`
 643
- 644 • The `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>` message may contain nested status code information. Mul-
 645 tiple values **MUST** be URL-encoded by creating a space-separated list (see general requirements at top of
 646 Section 3.1.2.1.

647 3.1.3. Provider Metadata

648 The majority of the Liberty profiles defined in this document rely on metadata that specify the policies that govern
 649 the behavior of the service provider or identity provider. These provider metadata may be shared out of band between
 650 an identity provider and a service provider prior to the exchange of Liberty protocol messages or with the protocols
 651 described in [LibertyMetadata]. The provider metadata relevant to each profile are listed in this document at the
 652 beginning of the profile category. Refer to [LibertyMetadata] for a complete enumeration of the Liberty provider
 653 metadata elements and their associated schema.

654 3.2. Single Sign-On and Federation Profiles

655 This section defines the profiles by which a service provider obtains an authentication assertion of a user agent from
 656 an identity provider to facilitate single sign-on. Additionally, the single sign-on profiles can be used as a means of
 657 federating an identity from a service provider to an identity provider through the use of the `<NameIDPolicy>` element
 658 in the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` protocol message as specified in [LibertyProtSchema].

659 The single sign-on profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]:

- 660 • `ProviderID` Used to uniquely identify the service provider to the identity provider and is documented in these
 661 profiles as "service provider ID."
- 662 • `AffiliationID` Used to uniquely identify an affiliation group to the identity provider and is documented in
 663 these profiles as "affiliation ID."
- 664 • `SingleSignOnServiceURL` The URL at the identity provider that the service provider should use when sending
 665 single sign-on and federation requests. It is documented in these profiles as "single sign-on service URL."
- 666 • `AssertionConsumerServiceURL` The URL(s) at the service provider that an identity provider should use when
 667 sending single sign-on or federation responses. It is documented in these profiles as "assertion consumer service
 668 URL."
- 669 • `SOAPEndpoint` The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
 670 messages are sent.

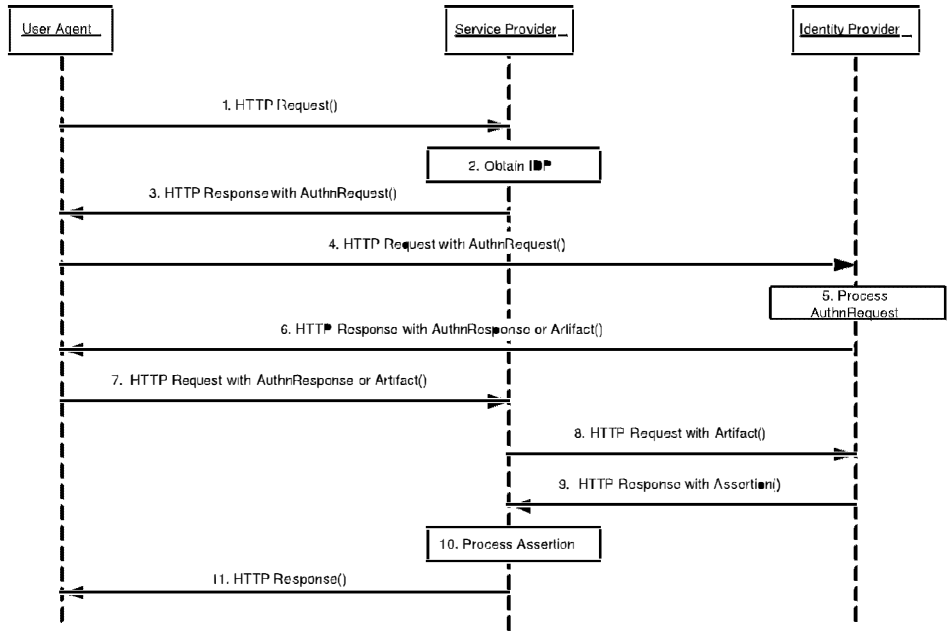
671 **3.2.1. Common Interactions and Processing Rules**

672 This section defines the set of interactions and process rules that are common to all single sign-on profiles.

673 All single sign-on profiles can be described by one interaction diagram, provided that different messages are optional
674 in different profiles and that the actual content of the messages may differ slightly. Where interactions and messages
675 differ or are optional, they are designated and detailed within the specific single sign-on profiles. Figure 1 represents
676 the basic template of interactions for achieving single sign-on. This should be used as the baseline for all single sign-on
677 profiles.

678 In the figure below, steps 1 through 5 can be considered typical but optional. An identity provider MAY initiate a
679 SSO profile by unilaterally creating a `<lib:AuthnResponse>` or artifact, and proceeding with step 6, as discussed
680 in [LibertyProtSchema].

681 It should be noted that multiple identity providers may be involved in the authentication of the Principal. Although
682 a single identity provider is depicted in the profiles below (Figure 1, that identity provider MAY interact with other
683 identity providers to authenticate the Principal using the proxying method described in [LibertyProtSchema] and the
684 profiles as noted below. In such situations these profiles would be used by the identity provider originally contacted
685 by the requesting service provider to communicate with additional identity providers.



686

687 **Figure 1. Basic single sign-on profile.**

688 **3.2.1.1. Step 1: HTTP Request**

689 In step 1, the user agent accesses the intersite transfer service at the service provider with information about the desired
690 target attached to the URL. Typically, access to the intersite transfer service occurs via a redirection by the service
691 provider in response to a user agent request for a restricted resource.

692 It is RECOMMENDED that the HTTP request be made over either SSL 3.0 (see [SSL]) or TLS 1.0 (see [RFC2246])
693 to maintain confidentiality and message integrity in step 1.

694 **3.2.1.2. Step 2: Obtain Identity Provider**

695 In step 2, the service provider obtains the address of the appropriate identity provider to redirect the user agent to
696 in step 3. The means by which the identity provider address is obtained is implementation-dependent and up to the
697 service provider. The service provider MAY use the Liberty identity provider introduction profile in this step.

698 **3.2.1.3. Step 3: HTTP Response with <AuthnRequest>**

699 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and sends the user agent to the single sign-on service
700 URL at the identity provider. The form and contents of the HTTP response in this step are profile-dependent.

701 **3.2.1.4. Step 4: HTTP Request with <AuthnRequest>**

702 In step 4, the user agent accesses the identity provider's single sign-on service URL with the <lib:AuthnRequest>
703 information. This request may be a GET or POST request; providers MUST support both methods. As described later,
704 such a POST MUST contain an LAREQ form element containing the XML protocol request in base64-encoded format.

705 **3.2.1.5. Step 5: Processing <AuthnRequest>**

706 In step 5, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:AuthnRequest> message according to the rules specified in
707 [LibertyProtSchema].

708 If the Principal has not yet been authenticated with the identity provider, authentication at the identity provider MAY
709 occur in this step. The identity provider MAY obtain consent from the Principal for federation, or otherwise consult
710 the Principal. To this end the identity provider MAY return to the HTTP request any HTTP response; including but
711 not limited to HTTP Authentication, HTTP redirect, or content. The identity provider SHOULD respect the HTTP
712 User-Agent and Accept headers and SHOULD avoid responding with content-types that the User-Agent may not be
713 able to accept. Authentication of the Principal by the identity provider is dependent upon the <lib:AuthnRequest>
714 message content.

715 In case the identity provider responds to the user agent with a form, it is RECOMMENDED that the <input>
716 parameters of the form be named according to [RFC3106] whenever possible.

717 **3.2.1.6. Step 6: HTTP Response with <AuthnResponse> or Artifact**

718 In step 6, the identity provider MUST respond to the user agent with a <lib:AuthnResponse>, a SAML artifact, or
719 an error. The form and contents of the HTTP response in this step are profile-dependent.

720 **3.2.1.7. Step 7: HTTP Request with <AuthnResponse> or Artifact**

721 In step 7, the user agent accesses the assertion consumer service URL at the service provider with a
722 <lib:AuthnResponse> or a SAML artifact. This request may be a GET or POST request; providers MUST
723 support both methods. As described later, such a POST MUST contain an LARES form element containing the XML
724 protocol request or artifact in base64-encoded format.

725 **3.2.1.8. Step 8: HTTP Request with Artifact**

726 Step 8 is required only for single sign-on profiles that use a SAML artifact.

727 In this step the service provider, in effect, dereferences the single SAML artifact in its possession to acquire the
728 authentication assertion that corresponds to the artifact.

729 The service provider MUST send a <samlp:Request> SOAP message to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint,
730 requesting the assertion by supplying the SAML assertion artifact in the <samlp:AssertionArtifact> element as
731 specified in [SAMLBind1].

732 The service provider MUST provide a mechanism for the identity provider to authenticate the service provider.

733 **3.2.1.9. Step 9: HTTP Response with Assertion**

734 Step 9 is required only for single sign-on profiles that use a SAML artifact.

735 In this step if the identity provider is able to find or construct the requested assertion, it responds with a
736 <samlp:Response> SOAP message with the requested <saml:Assertion>. Otherwise, it returns an appropri-
737 ate status code, as defined within the "SOAP binding for SAML" (see[SAMLEndpoint]) and the [LibertyProtSchema].

738 3.2.1.10. Step 10: Process Assertion

739 In step 10, the service provider processes the <saml:Assertion> returned in the <samlp:Response> or
740 <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message to determine its validity and how to respond to the Principal's original
741 request. The signature on the <saml:Assertion> must be verified.

742 The service provider processing of the assertion MUST adhere to the rules defined in [SAMLCore1.1] for things such
743 as assertion <saml:Conditions> and <saml:Advice>.

744 The service provider MAY obtain authentication context information for the Principal's current session
745 from the <lib:AuthnContext> element contained in <saml:Advice>. Similarly, the information in the
746 <lib:RelayState> element MAY be obtained and used in further processing by the service provider.

747 3.2.1.11. Step 11: HTTP Response

748 In step 11, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that either allows or denies access to the originally requested
749 resource.

750 3.2.2. Liberty Artifact Profile

751 The Liberty artifact profile relies on a reference to the needed assertion traveling in a SAML artifact, which the service
752 provider must dereference from the identity provider to determine whether the Principal is authenticated. This profile
753 is an adaptation of the "Browser/artifact profile" for SAML as documented in [SAMLEndpoint]. See Figure 3.

754 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile (for example,
755 <lib:ProtocolProfile> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message):

756 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/brws-art>

757 The Liberty artifact profile consists of a single interaction among three parties: a user agent, an identity provider, and
758 a service provider, with a nested subinteraction between the identity provider and the service provider.

759 3.2.2.1. Interactions

760 Figure 2 illustrates the Liberty artifact profile for single sign-on.

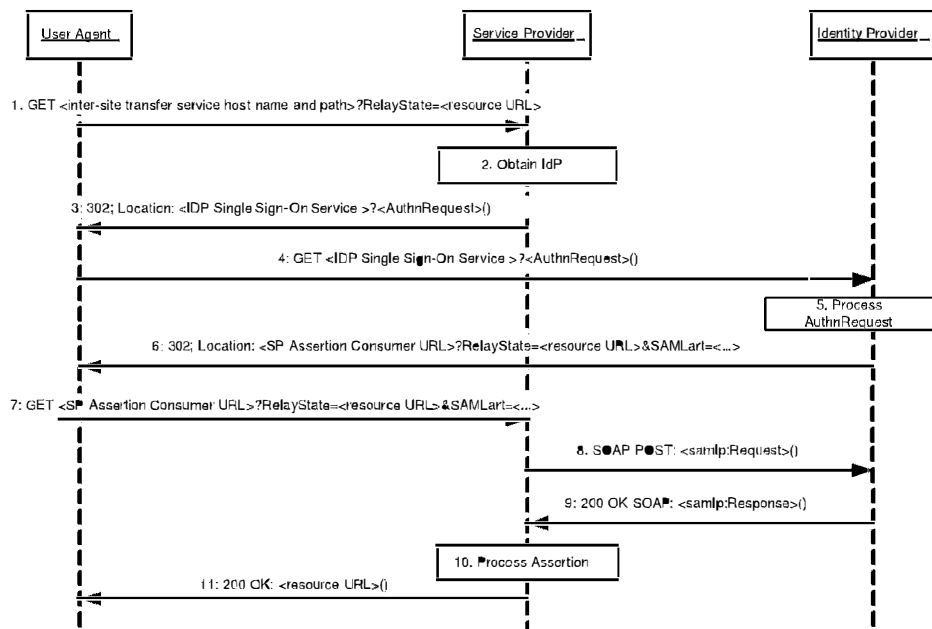


Figure 2. Liberty artifact profile for single sign-on

This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1. Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider. When implementing this profile, all processing rules defined in Section 3.2.1 for the single sign-on profiles MUST be followed. Additionally, the following rules MUST be observed as they relate to steps 3, 6 and 7:

3.2.2.1.1. Step 3: Single sign on Service with <AuthnRequest>

In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and instructs the user agent to access the single sign-on service URL at the identity provider.

This step may take place via an HTTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user agent being instructed to make an HTTP GET or POST request to the identity provider's single signon service.

This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

- The response MUST contain the identity provider's single sign-on service URL (for example, as the Location header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the `action` attribute of an `HTMLForm` or the `href` attribute of a `<go>` element in a WML redirect deck).

- The identity provider's single sign-on service URL MUST specify `https` as the URL scheme.

Note:

Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on `https`.

- The response MUST include one of the following:

- 781 • A <query> component containing the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.
- 782
- 783 **Note:**
- 784 The <lib:RelayState> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message can be used by the service provider to help maintain state information during the single sign-on and federation process. For example, the originally requested resource (i.e., RelayState in step 1) could be stored as the value for the <lib:RelayState> element, which would then be returned to the service provider in the <lib:AuthnResponse> in step 7. The service provider could then use this information to formulate the HTTP response to the user agent in step 11.
- 785
- 786
- 787
- 788
- 789
- 790 • An HTTP form containing the field LAREQ with the value of the <lib:AuthnRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnRequest> MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (see [RFC2045]).
- 791
- 792

793 Implementation examples:

794 • HTTP 302 Redirect

795

796

797 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>

798 <other headers>

799 Location: https://<Identity Provider Single Sign-On Service host name and path>?<query>

800 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>

801

802

803 • HTML Form POST

804

805

806 <html>

807 <body onload=document.forms[0].submit() ">

808 <form action="https://<Identity Provider Single Sign-On Service host name and path>"

809 method="POST">

810 <input type="hidden" name="LAREQ" value="<base64 encoded AuthnRequest>" >

811 </form>

812 </body>

813 </html>

814

815

816 • WML Redirect with POST

817

818 ...

819 <wml>

820 <card id="redirect" title="Log In">

821 <onenterforward>

822 <go method="post" href="<Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>" >

823 <postfield name="LAREQ" Value="<base64-encoded AuthnRequest>" />

824 </go>

825 </onenterforward>

826 <onenterbackward>

827 <prev/>

828 </onenterbackward>

829 <p>

830 Contacting IdP. Please wait...

831 </p>

832 ...

833 </card>

834 ...

835 </wml>

836

837

```

838 • WML Redirect with GET
839
840 ...
841 <wml>
842 <card id="redirect" title="Log In">
843   <onenterforward>
844     <go href="<Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>?<query>" />
845   </onenterforward>
846   <onenterbackward>
847     <rev/>
848   </onenterbackward>
849   <p>
850     Contacting IdP. Please wait...
851   </p>
852   ...
853 </card>
854 ...
855 </wml>
856
857

```

858 where:

859 <Identity Provider Single Sign-On service host name and path>

860 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single sign-on service URL at the
861 identity provider.

862 <query>= ...<URL-encoded AuthnRequest> ...

863 A <query> component MUST contain a single authentication request:

864 <base64-encoded AuthnRequest>

865 A <base64-encoded AuthnRequest> component MUST contain a single authentication request message in
866 base64-encoded form.

867 3.2.2.1.2. Step 6: Redirecting to the Service Provider

868 In step 6, the identity provider instructs the user agent to access the service provider's assertion consumer service
869 URL, and provides a SAML artifact for de-referencing by the service provider.

870 This step may take place via an IHTTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user
871 agent being instructed to make an IHTTP GET or POST request to the service provider's assertion consumer service.

872 This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

873 • The response MUST contain the service provider's assertion consumer service URL (for example, as the Location
874 header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the action attribute of an HTMLform or the href attribute of a <go> element
875 in a WML redirect deck).

876 • The service provider's assertion consumer service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.

877 Note:

878 Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are
879 encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on https.

880 • The response MUST include one of the following:

- 881 • A <query> component containing a parameter SAMLart, the value of which is the SAML artifact on success
- 882 or on failure. In the case of failure, the status will be conveyed in the <saml:Response> returned in Step 9.
- 883 Additionally, if the <lib:AuthnRequest> processed in Step 5 included a value for the <lib:RelayState>
- 884 element, then a parameter named RelayState with a value set to that of the <lib:RelayState> element MUST
- 885 be included in the <query> component.

- 886 • An HTTP form containing the field LARES with the value of the SAML Artifact as defined in Section 3.2.2.2
- 887 If a value for <RelayState> was supplied in the <lib:AuthnRequest>, then the form MUST contain a
- 888 field RelayState, with a value obtained from that element in the <lib:AuthnRequest>.

- 889 • All SAML artifacts returned MUST contain the same identity provider ID.

890 Implementation examples:

891 • HTTP 302 Redirect

```
892
893 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
894 <other headers>
895 Location: https://<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>?<query>
896 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
897
898
899
```

900 • HTML Form POST

```
901
902 <html>
903   <body onLoad=document.forms[0].submit() ">
904     <form action="https://<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>"
905     method="POST">
906       <input type="hidden" name="LAREQ" value="<SAML Artifact>" >
907       <input type="hidden" name="RelayState" value="<RelayState>" >
908     </form>
909   </body>
910 </html>
911
912
913
```

914 • WML Redirect with POST

```
915   ...
916   <wml>
917     <card id="redirect" title="Artifact">
918       <onenterforward>
919         <go method="post" href="<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>" >
920           <postfield name="LARES" Value="<SAML Artifact>" />
921           <postfield name="RelayState" Value="<RelayState>" />
922         </go>
923       </onenterforward>
924       <onenterbackward>
925         <prev/>
926       </onenterbackward>
927       <p>
928         Contacting IdP. Please wait...
929       </p>
930     </card>
931     ...
932   </wml>
933   ...
934 </wml>
935
936
```

937 • WML Redirect with GET

```

938
939     ...
940     <wml>
941     <card id="redirect" title="Artifact">
942         <onenterforward>
943             <go href="<Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>?<query>" />
944         </onenterforward>
945         <onenterbackward>
946             <prev/>
947         </onenterbackward>
948         <p>
949             Contacting IdP. Please wait...
950         </p>
951     ...
952     </card>
953     ...
954     </wml>
955
956

```

957 where:

958 <Service Provider Assertion Consumer Service host name and path>

959 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the assertion consumer service URI at the
 960 service provider.

961 <query>= ...SAMLArt=<SAML Artifact> ...RelayState=<resource URI>

962 A <query> component MUST contain at least one SAML Artifact. A single RelayState MUST be included if a value
 963 for the <RelayState> was provided in the <lib:AuthnRequest>. All SAML Artifacts included MUST contain the
 964 same identity provider ID (see Section 3.2.2.2).

965 <SAML Artifact>

966 A <SAML Artifact> component MUST contain at least one SAML Artifact.

967 <RelayState>

968 A form field named RelayState, with the value of that element from the <lib:AuthnRequest> MUST be included
 969 if a value for the <RelayState> was provided in the <lib:AuthnRequest> and the HTTP request is made using a
 970 POST.

971 **3.2.2.1.3. Step 7: Accessing the Assertion Consumer Service**

972 In step 7, the user agent accesses the assertion consumer service URL at the service provider, with a SAML artifact
 973 representing the Principal's authentication information attached to the URL.

974 **3.2.2.2. Artifact Format**

975 The artifact format includes a mandatory two-byte artifact type code, as follows:

```

976
977
978 SAML_artifact      := B64 (TypeCode RemainingArtifact)
979 TypeCode           := Byte1Byte2
980
981

```

982 The notation B64 (TypeCode RemainingArtifact) represents the application of the base64 transformation to the
 983 catenation of the TypeCode and RemainingArtifact. This profile defines an artifact type of type code 0x0003,

984 which is REQUIRED (mandatory to implement) for any implementation of the Liberty browser artifact profile. This
985 artifact type is defined as follows:

```
986
987
988 TypeCode          := 0x0003
989 RemainingArtifact := IdentityProviderSuccinctID AssertionHandle
990 IdentityProviderSuccinctID := 20-byte_sequence
991 AssertionHandle    := 20-byte_sequence
992
993
```

994 IdentityProviderSuccinctID is a 20-byte sequence used by the service provider to determine identity provider
995 identity and location. It is assumed that the service provider will maintain a table of IdentityProviderSuccinctID
996 values as well as the URL (or address) for the corresponding SAML responder at the identity provider. This
997 information is communicated between the identity provider and service provider out of band. On receiving the SAML
998 artifact, the service provider determines whether the IdentityProviderSuccinctID belongs to a known identity
999 provider and, if so, obtains the location before sending a SAML request.

1000 Any two identity providers with a common service provider MUST use distinct IdentityProviderSuccinctID
1001 values. Construction of AssertionHandle values is governed by the principles that the values SHOULD have no
1002 predictable relationship to the contents of the referenced assertion at the identity provider, and that constructing or
1003 guessing the value of a valid, outstanding assertion handle MUST be infeasible.

1004 The following rules MUST be followed for the creation of SAML artifacts at identity providers:

- 1005 • Each identity provider selects a single identification URL, corresponding to the provider metadata element
1006 ProviderID specified in [LibertyMetadata].
- 1007 • The identity provider constructs the IdentityProviderSuccinctID component of the artifact by taking the
1008 SHA-1 hash of the identification URL as a 20-byte binary value. Note that the IdentityProviderSuccinctID
1009 value, used to construct the artifact, is not encoded in hexadecimal. The AssertionHandle value is constructed
1010 from a cryptographically strong random or pseudo-random number sequence (see [RFC1750]) generated by the
1011 identity provider. The sequence consists of a value of at least eight bytes. The value should be padded to a total
1012 length of 20 bytes.

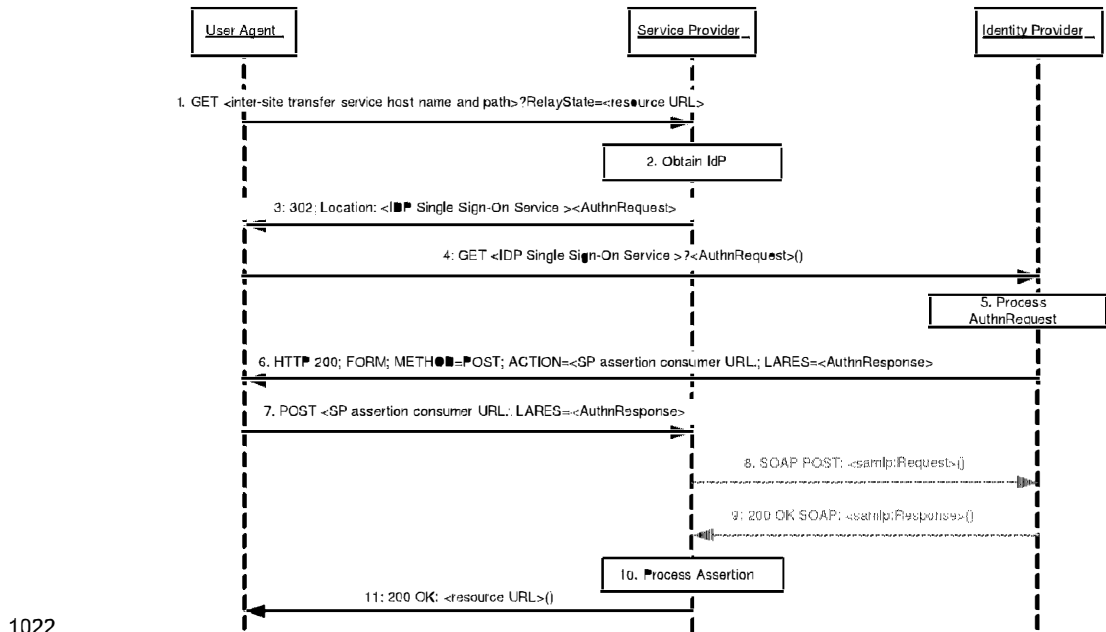
1013 3.2.3. Liberty Browser POST Profile

1014 The Liberty browser POST profile allows authentication information to be supplied to an identity provider without the
1015 use of an artifact. Figure 3 diagrams the interactions between parties in the Liberty POST profile. This profile is an
1016 adaptation of the "Browser/post profile" for SAML as documented in [SAMLBind11].

1017 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile (for example,
1018 <lib:ProtocolProfile> element of the <lib:AuthnRequest> message):

1019 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/brows-post>

1020 The Liberty POST profile consists of a series of two interactions, the first between a user agent and an identity provider,
1021 and the second directly between the user agent and the service provider.



1022

1023

Figure 3. Liberty browser POST profile for single sign-on

1024 This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1.
1025 Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider.

1026 When implementing this profile, all processing rules defined in Section 3.2.1 for single sign-on profiles MUST be
1027 followed with the exception that steps 8 and 9 MUST be omitted. Additionally, the following rules MUST be observed
1028 as they relate to steps 3, 6 and 7:

1029 **3.2.3.1. Step 3: Single Sign-On Service with <AuthnRequest>**

1030 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service responds and sends the user agent to the single sign-on service
1031 URL at the identity provider.

1032 This step may take place via an HTTP 302 redirect, a WML redirect deck or any other method that results in the user
1033 agent being instructed to make an HTTP GET or POST request to the identity provider's single sign-on service.

1034 This response MUST adhere to the following rules:

1035 • The response MUST contain the identity provider's single sign-on service URL (for example, as the Location
1036 header of an HTTP 302 redirect, the action attribute of an HTML form or the href attribute of a <go> element
1037 in a WML redirect deck).

1038 • The identity provider's single sign-on service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.

1039 **Note:**

1040 Future protocols may be adopted and enabled to work within this framework. Therefore, implementers are
1041 encouraged to not hardcode a reliance on https.

1042 • The response MUST include one of the following:

1043 • A `<query>` component containing the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2

1045 Note:

1046 The `<lib:RelayState>` element of the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message can be used by the service provider to help maintain state information during the single sign-on and federation process. For example, the originally requested resource (that is, RelayState in step 1) could be stored as the value for the `<lib:RelayState>` element, which would then be returned to the service provider in the `<lib:AuthnResponse>` in step 7. The service provider could then use this information to formulate the HTTP response to the user agent in step 11.

1052 • An HTTP form containing the field LARE with the value of the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The `<lib:AuthnRequest>` MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (see [RFC2045]).

1055 See the discussion of this step in the artifact profile for implementation examples.

1056 **3.2.3.2. Step 6: Generating and Supplying the `<AuthnResponse>`**

1057 In step 6 the identity provider generates an HTML form containing an authentication assertion that MUST be sent in an HTTP 200 response to the user agent.

1059 The form MUST be constructed such that it requests a POST to the service provider's assertion consumer URL with form contents that contain the field LARES with the value being the `<lib:AuthnResponse>` protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The `<lib:AuthnResponse>` MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the `<lib:AuthnResponse>` and all of its elements. The service provider's assertion consumer service URL used as the target of the form POST MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, it MUST be treated as an error by the identity provider.

1065 Multiple `<saml:Assertion>` elements MAY be included in the response. The identity provider MUST digitally sign each of the assertions included in the response.

1067 The `<saml:ConfirmationMethod>` element of the assertion MUST be set to the value specified in [SAMLCore1] for "Assertion Bearer."

1069 **3.2.3.3. Step 7: Posting the Form Containing the `<AuthnResponse>`**

1070 In step 7 the user agent issues the HTTP POST request containing the `<lib:AuthnResponse>` to the service provider.

1071 **3.2.4. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile**

1072 The Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile specifies interactions between Liberty-enabled clients and/or proxies, service providers, and identity providers. See Figure 5. A Liberty-enabled client is a client that has, or knows how to obtain, knowledge about the identity provider that the Principal wishes to use with the service provider. In addition a Liberty-enabled client receives and sends Liberty messages in the body of HTTP requests and responses. Therefore, Liberty-enabled clients have no restrictions on the size of the Liberty protocol messages.

1077 A Liberty-enabled proxy is an HTTP proxy (typically a WAP gateway) that emulates a Liberty-enabled client. Unless stated otherwise, all statements referring to "LECP" are to be understood as statements about both Liberty-enabled clients and Liberty-enabled proxies.

1080 In some environments the successful deployment of a Liberty-Enabled proxy may require that service providers in those environments perform operations in addition to those described below. Such cases, and specific guidance for them, are covered in [LibertyImplGuide].

1083 The following URI-based identifier must be used when referencing this specific profile (for example, `<lib:ProtocolProfile>` element of the `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message):

1085 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/lecp`

1086 A LECP, in addition to meeting the common requirements for profiles in Section 3.1, MUST indicate that it is a
1087 LECP by including a Liberty-Enabled header or entry in the value of the HTTP User-Agent header for each HTTP
1088 request it makes. The preferred method is the Liberty-Enabled header. The formats of the Liberty-Enabled header and
1089 User-Agent header entry are defined in Section 3.2.4.1.

1090 3.2.4.1. Liberty-Enabled Indications

1091 A LECP SHOULD add the Liberty-Enabled header to each HTTP request. The Liberty-Enabled header MUST be
1092 named `Liberty-Enabled` and be defined as using Augmented BNF as specified in section 2 of [RFC2616].

```
1093
1094 Liberty-Enabled = "Liberty-Enabled" ":" LIB_Version [" " 1#Extension]
1095 LIB_Version = "LIBV" "=" 1*absoluteURI
1096 ; any spaces or commas in the absoluteURI MUST be escaped as defined in section 2.4 of [RFC 2396]
1097 Extension = ExtName "=" ExtValue
1098 ExtName = {["." host] | <any field-value but ".", ",", "<any field-value but "=" or ">"}
1099 ExtValue = <any field-value but ">"}
1100
```

1101 The comment, field-value, and product productions are defined in [RFC2616]. `LIB_Version` identifies the versions
1102 of the Liberty specifications that are supported by this LECP. Each version is identified by a URI. Service providers or
1103 identity providers receiving a Liberty-Enabled header MUST ignore any URIs listed in the `LIB_Version` production
1104 that they do not recognize. All LECPs compliant with this specification MUST send out, at minimum, the URI
1105 `http://projectliberty.org/specs/v1` as a value in the `LIB_Version` production. It SHOULD precede this
1106 with the URI `urn:liberty:iff:2003-08` if it supports version 1.2 requests and knows that the identity providers
1107 available to it also support version 1.2 requests and responses. It MUST NOT include this URI if it knows that the
1108 identity providers available to it cannot process version 1.2 messages. The ordering of the URIs in the `LIB_Version`
1109 header is meaningful; therefore, service providers and identity providers are encouraged to use the first version in
1110 the list that they support. Supported Liberty versions are not negotiated between the LECP and the service provider.
1111 The LECP advertises what version it supports; the service provider MUST return the response for the corresponding
1112 version as defined in step 3 below.

1113 Optional extensions MAY be added to the Liberty-Enabled header to indicate new information. The value of the
1114 `ExtName` production MUST use the "host." ";" prefixed form if the new extension name has not been standardized
1115 and registered with Liberty or its designated registration authorities. The value of the host production MUST be an
1116 IP or DNS address that is owned by the issuer of the new name. By using the DNS/IP prefix, effectively namespace
1117 collisions can be prevented without the need of introducing another centralized registration agency.

1118 A LECP MAY include the Liberty-Agent header in its requests. This header provides information about the software
1119 implementing the LECP functionality and is similar to the User-Agent and Server headers in HTTP.

```
1120
1121 Liberty-Agent = "Liberty-Agent" ":" 1*( Product | comment)
1122
```

1123 Note:

1124 The reason for introducing the new header (that is, Liberty-Enabled) rather than using User-Agent is that a
1125 LECP may be a Liberty-enabled proxy. In such a case the information about the Liberty-enabled proxy would
1126 not be in the User-Agent header. In theory the information could be in the VIA header. However, for security
1127 reasons, values in the VIA header can be collapsed, and comments (where software information would be
1128 recorded) can always be removed. As such, the VIA header is not suitable. Using the User-Agent header
1129 for a Liberty-enabled client and the Liberty-Agent header for a Liberty-enabled proxy was also discussed.
1130 However, this approach seemed too complex.

1131 Originally the Liberty-Agent header was going to be part of the Liberty-Enabled header. However, header
 1132 lengths in HTTP implementations are limited; therefore, putting this information in its own header was
 1133 considered the preferred approach.

1134 A LECP MAY add a Liberty-Enabled entry in the HTTP User-Agent request header. The HTTP User-Agent header is
 1135 specified in [RFC2616]. A LECP MAY include in the value of this header the Liberty-Enabled string as defined
 1136 above for the Liberty-Enabled header.

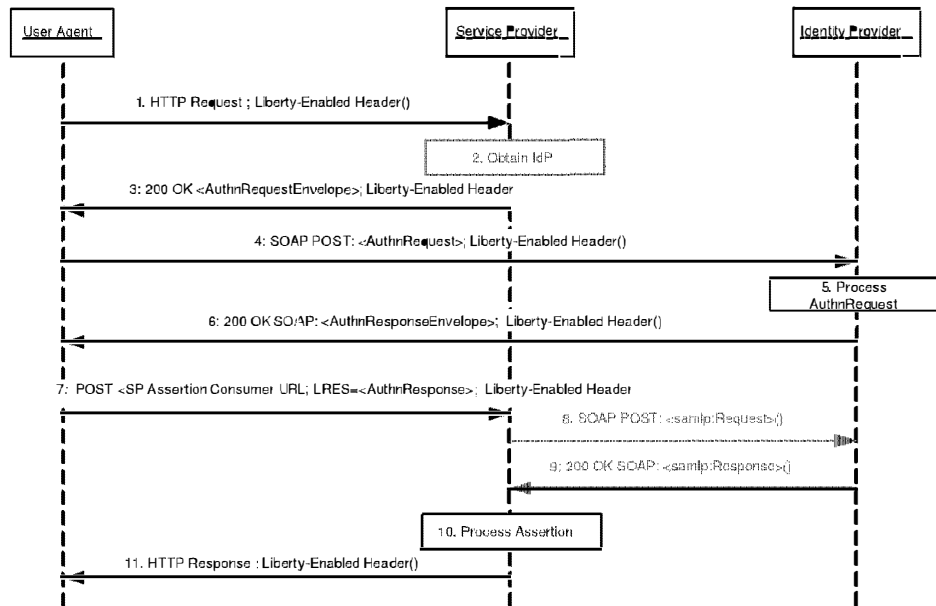
1137 **Note:**

1138 The reason for adding information to the User-Agent header is to allow for Liberty-enabled client products
 1139 that must rely on a platform that cannot be instructed to insert new headers in each HTTP request.

1140 The User-Agent header is often overloaded; therefore, the Liberty-Enabled header should be the first choice
 1141 for any implementation of a LECP. The entry in the User-Agent header then remains as a last resort.

1142 **3.2.4.2. Interactions**

1143 Figure 5 illustrates the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile for single sign-on.



1144

1145 **Figure 5. Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile for single sign-on**

1146 This profile description assumes that the user agent has already authenticated at the identity provider prior to step 1.
 1147 Thus, a valid session exists for the user agent at the identity provider.

1148 The LECP receives authentication requests from the service provider in the body of the HTTP response. The
 1149 LECP submits this authentication request as a SOAP request to the identity provider. Because this SOAP re-
 1150 quest is between the LECP and the identity provider, TLS authentication cannot be performed between service
 1151 provider and identity provider; therefore, service providers and identity providers MUST rely on the signature of
 1152 the <lib:AuthnRequest> and the returned <saml:Assertion>, respectively, for mutual authentication.

1153 When implementing this profile, processing rules for steps 5, 10, and 11 defined in Section 3.2.1 for single sign-on
 1154 profiles MUST be followed, while steps 2, 8, and 9 MUST be omitted. Additionally, the following rules MUST be
 1155 observed as they relate to steps 1, 3, 4, 6, and 7:

1156 3.2.4.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Service Provider

1157 In step 1, the user agent accesses the service provider with the Liberty-Enabled header (or with the Liberty-Enabled
1158 entry in the User-Agent header) included in the HTTP request.

1159 The HTTP request MUST contain only one Liberty-Enabled header. Hence if a proxy receives an HTTP request
1160 that contains a Liberty-Enabled header, it MUST NOT add another Liberty-Enabled header. However, a proxy
1161 MAY replace the Liberty-Enabled header. A proxy that replaces or adds a Liberty-Enabled header MUST process
1162 <lib:AuthnRequest> messages as defined in steps 3 and 4 as well as <lib:AuthnResponse> messages as
1163 specified in steps 6 and 7.

1164 It is RECOMMENDED that a LECP add "application/vnd.liberty-request+xml" as one of its supported
1165 content types to the Accept header.

1166 3.2.4.2.2. Step 3: HTTP Response with <AuthnRequest>

1167 In step 3, the service provider's intersite transfer service issues an HTTP 200 OK response to the user agent. The
1168 response MUST contain a single <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope> with content as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].
1169 If a service provider receives a Liberty-Enabled header, or a User-Agent header with the Liberty-Enabled entry, the
1170 service provider MUST respond according to the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile and include a Liberty-
1171 Enabled header in its response. Hence service providers MUST support the Liberty-enabled client and proxy profile.

1172 The processing rules and default values for the Liberty-Enabled indications are as defined in Section 3.2.4.1. The
1173 service provider MAY advertise any Liberty version supported in this header, not only the version used for the specific
1174 response.

1175 The HTTP response MUST contain a Content-Type header with the value application/vnd.liberty-request+xml
1176 unless the LECP and service provider have negotiated a different format.

1177 A service provider MAY provide a list of identity providers it recognizes by including the <lib:IDPList> element
1178 in the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>. The format and processing rules for the identity provider list MUST be as
1179 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1180 Note:

1181 In cases where a value for the <lib:GetComplete> element is provided within <lib:IDPList>, the URI
1182 value for this element MUST specify https as the URL <scheme>.

1183 The service provider MUST specify a URL for receiving <AuthnResponse> elements, locally gener-
1184 ated by the intermediary, by including the <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> element in the
1185 <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>.

1186 The following example demonstrates the usage of the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>:

```
1187
1188     <?xml version="1.0" ?>
1189     <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope xmlns:lib="urn:liberty:iff:2003-08">
1190       <lib:AuthnRequest>
1191         . . . AuthnRequest goes here . . .
1192       </lib:AuthnRequest>
1193       <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
1194         https://service-provider.com/LibertyLogin
1195       </lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
1196       <lib:IDPList>
1197         . . . IdP list goes here . . .
1198       </lib:IDPList>
1199     </lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>
```

1200 If the service provider does not support the LECP-advertised Liberty version, the service provider MUST return to the
1201 LECP an HTTP 501 response with the reason phrase "Unsupported Liberty Version."

1202 The responses in step 3 and step 6 SHOULD NOT be cached. To this end service providers and identity providers
1203 SHOULD place both "Cache-Control: no-cache" and "Pragma: no-cache" on their responses to ensure that
1204 the LECP and any intervening proxies will not cache the response.

1205 3.2.4.2.3. Step 4: HTTP Request with <AuthnRequest>

1206 In step 4, the LECP determines the appropriate identity provider to use and then issues an HTTP POST of the
1207 <lib:AuthnRequest> in the body of a SOAP message to the identity provider's single sign-on service URL. The
1208 request MUST contain the same <lib:AuthnRequest> as was received in the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>
1209 from the service provider in step 3.

1210 Note:

1211 The identity provider list can be used by the LECP to create a user identifier to be presented to the Principal.
1212 For example, the LECP could compare the list of the Principal's known identities (and the identities of the
1213 identity provider that provides those identities) against the list provided by the service provider and then only
1214 display the intersection.

1215 If the LECP discovers a syntax error due to the service provider or cannot proceed any further for other reasons (for
1216 example, cannot resolve identity provider, cannot reach the identity provider, etc.), the LECP MUST return to the
1217 service provider a <lib:AuthnResponse> with a <samlp:Status> indicating the desired error element as defined
1218 in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnResponse> containing the error status MUST be sent using a POST to the
1219 service provider's assertion consumer service URL obtained from the <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>
1220 element of the <lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field LARES with
1221 the value being the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema], containing the
1222 <samlp:Status>. The <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (refer to
1223 [RFC2045]) to the <lib:AuthnResponse> and all its elements.

1224 3.2.4.2.4. Step 6: HTTP Response with <AuthnResponse>

1225 In step 6, the identity provider responds to the <lib:AuthnRequest> by issuing an HTTP 200 OK response. The
1226 response MUST contain a single <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> in the body of a SOAP message with content as
1227 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1228 The identity provider MUST include the Liberty-Enabled HTTP header following the same processing rules as defined
1229 in 3.2.5.1.

1230 The Content-Type MUST be set to application/vnd.liberty-response+xml.

1231 If the identity provider discovers a syntax error due to the service provider or LECP or cannot proceed any further
1232 for other reasons (for example, an unsupported Liberty version), the identity provider MUST return to the LECP a
1233 <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> containing a <lib:AuthnResponse> with a <samlp:Status> indicating the
1234 desired error element as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1235 3.2.4.2.5. Step 7: Posting the Form Containing the <AuthnResponse>

1236 In step 7, the LECP issues an HTTP POST of the <lib:AuthnResponse> that was received in the
1237 <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> SOAP response in step 6. The <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST
1238 be sent using a POST to the service provider's assertion consumer service URL identified by the
1239 <lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL> element within the <lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope> obtained
1240 from the identity provider in step 6. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field LARES with the value being
1241 the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <lib:AuthnResponse>
1242 MUST be encoded by applying a base64 transformation (refer to [RFC2045]) to the <lib:AuthnResponse> and

1243 all its elements. The service provider's assertion consumer service URL used as the target of the form POST MUST
 1244 specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, it MUST be treated as an error by the identity
 1245 provider.

1246 If the LECP discovers an error (for example, syntax error in identity provider response), the LECP MUST return
 1247 to the service provider a <lib:AuthnResponse> with a <samlp:Status> indicating the appropriate error ele-
 1248 ment as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The <ProviderID> in the <lib:AuthnResponse> MUST be set to
 1249 urn:liberty:iff:lecp. The <lib:AuthnResponse> containing the error status MUST be sent using a POST to the
 1250 service provider's assertion consumer service URL. The POST MUST be a form that contains the field named LARES
 1251 with its value being the <lib:AuthnResponse> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with format-
 1252 ting as specified Section 3.1.2. Any <lib:AuthnResponse> messages created by the identity provider MUST NOT
 1253 be sent to the service provider.

1254 3.3. Register Name Identifier Profiles

1255 This section defines the profiles by which a provider may register or change a name identifier for a Principal. This
 1256 message exchange is optional. During federation, the identity provider supplies an opaque handle identifying the
 1257 Principle. This is the <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>. If neither provider involved in the federation opts
 1258 to register any other name identifier, then this initial <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> is to be used by both
 1259 providers.

1260 An identity provider may choose to register a new <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier> at any time
 1261 subsequent to federation, using this protocol. Additionally, a service provider may choose to regis-
 1262 ter a <lib:SPPProvidedNameIdentifier>, which it expects the identity provider to use (instead of the
 1263 <lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>) when communicating with it about the Principal.

1264 Two profiles are specified: HTTP-Redirect-Based and SOAP/HTTP-based.

1265 Either the identity or service provider may initiate the register name identifier protocol. The available profiles are
 1266 defined in Section 3.3.1 and Section 3.3.2, and vary slightly based on whether the protocol was initiated by the identity
 1267 or service provider:

1268 • Register Name Identifier Initiated at Identity Provider

1269 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the identity provider and the
 1270 service provider.

1271 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the identity provider to the service provider.

1272 • Register Name Identifier Initiated at Service Provider

1273 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the service provider and the
 1274 identity provider.

1275 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the service provider to the identity provider.

1276 The interactions and processing rules for the SOAP/HTTP-based and HTTP-redirect-based profiles are essentially the
 1277 same regardless of whether the profile was initiated at the service provider or at the identity provider, but the message
 1278 flow directions are reversed.

1279 The register name identifier profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

- 1280 • **RegisterNameIdentifierProtocolProfile**: The service provider's preferred register name identifier pro-
 1281 file, which should be used by the identity provider when registering a new identifier. This would specify the URI
 1282 based identifier for one of the IDP Initiated register name identifier profiles.
- 1283 • **RegisterNameIdentifierServiceURL**: The URL used for user-agent-based Register Name Identifier Protocol
 1284 profiles.
- 1285 • **RegisterNameIdentifierServiceReturnURL**: The provider's redirecting URL for use after HTTP name
 1286 registration has taken place.
- 1287 • **SOAPEndpoint**: The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
 1288 messages are sent.

1289 3.3.1. Register Name Identifier Initiated at Identity Provider

1290 An identity provider MAY change the `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` it has assigned a Principal and
 1291 transmit that information to a service provider. The `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` MAY be changed
 1292 without changing any federations. The reasons an identity provider may wish to change the name identifier
 1293 for a Principal are implementation dependent, and thus outside the scope of this specification. Changing the
 1294 `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` MAY be accomplished in either an HTTP-Redirect-Based or SOAP/HTTP
 1295 mode.

1296 3.3.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

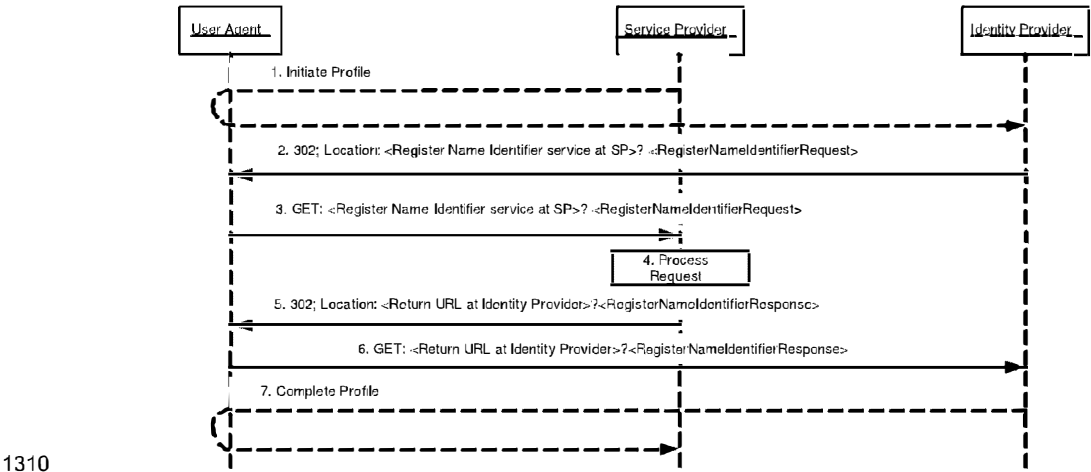
1297 A HTTP-redirect-based register name identifier profile cannot be self-initiated by an identity provider, but must be a
 1298 triggered by a message, such as an `<lib:AuthnRequest>`. We note that we do not normatively specify when and
 1299 how the identity provider can initiate this profile - that is left to the discretion of the identity provider. As an example,
 1300 it may be triggered by a message, such as an `<lib:AuthnRequest>`. When the identity provider decides to initiate
 1301 the profile in this case, it will insert this profile between the `AuthnRequest/AuthnResponse` transactions.

1302 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on using HTTP 302 redirects to communicate register name identifier messages
 1303 from the identity provider to the service provider. The HTTP-Redirect Register Name Identifier Profile (Figure 6)
 1304 illustrates this transaction.

1305 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1306 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-idp-http`

1307 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `RegisterNameIdentifierProtocolProfile`
 1308 when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving register name identifier
 1309 messages via an HTTP 302 redirect.



1310

1311

Figure 6. Register Name Identifier Profile.

1312 In an example scenario, the service provider makes an `<lib:AuthnRequest>` to the identity provider for authentication of the Principal's User Agent (step 1). The identity provider effects an `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` change in the service provider via a URL redirection. The profile is as follows:

1315 **3.3.1.1.1. Step 1: Initiate Profile**

1316 This interaction is not normatively specified as part of the profile, but shown for illustrative purposes.

1317 **3.3.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Service Provider Register Name Identifier Service**

1318 In step 2, the identity provider redirects the user agent to the register name identifier service at the service provider.

1319 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1320
- The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's register name identifier service URL.
 - 1321
 - 1322 • The service provider's register name identifier service URL MUST specify `https` as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
 - 1323
 - 1324 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a `<query>` component containing the `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>` protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

1325 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1326
1327 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1328 <other headers>
1329 Location : https://<Service Provider Register Name Identifier service URL>?<query>
1330 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1331

1332 where:

1333 <Service Provider Register Name Identifier service URL>

1334 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the register name identifier service URL
1335 at the service provider.

1336 <query>= ...<URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>...

1337 The <query> component MUST contain a single register name identifier request.

1338 3.3.1.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Register Name Identifier Service

1339 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's register name identifier service URL with the
1340 <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1341 3.3.1.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Register Name Identifier Request

1342 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> according to the
1343 rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1344 The service provider MAY remove the old name identifier after registering the new name identifier.

1345 3.3.1.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider return URL with the Register Name Identifier 1346 Response

1347 In step 5, the service provider's register name identifier service responds and redirects the user agent back to identity
1348 provider using a return URL location specified in the RegisterNameIdentifierServiceReturnURL metadata element. If
1349 the URL-encoded <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest> message received in step 3 contains a parameter
1350 named RelayState, then the service provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same RelayState
1351 parameter and its value in its response to the identity provider.

1352 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1353 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the identity providers return URL specified in the RegisterNameIden-
1354 tifierServiceReturnURL metadata element.
- 1355 • The identity provider's return URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is specified, the
1356 service provider MUST NOT redirect to the identity provider.
- 1357 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>
1358 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

1359 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1360
1361 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1362 <other headers>
1363 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL >?<query>
1364 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1365

1366 where:

1367 <Identity Provider Service Return URL>

1368 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1369 <query>= ...<URL-encoded RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>...

1370 The <query> component MUST contain a single register name identifier response. The <URL-encoded
1371 RegisterNameIdentifierResponse> component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value
1372 that was received in the URL-encoded register name identifier message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter
1373 was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded
1374 RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>.

1375 3.3.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider return URL with the Register Name Identifier 1376 Response

1377 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1378 3.3.1.1.7. Step 7: Complete profile

1379 This concludes the initial sequence, which triggered the initiation of this profile.

1380 3.3.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1381 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1382 URI: http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-idp-soap

1383 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element RegisterNameIdentifierProtocolPro-
1384 file when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving register name
1385 identifier messages via SOAP over HTTP.

1386 The steps involved in the SOAP/HTTP-based profile MUST utilize the SOAP binding for Liberty as defined in
1387 Section 2.1. See Figure 7.

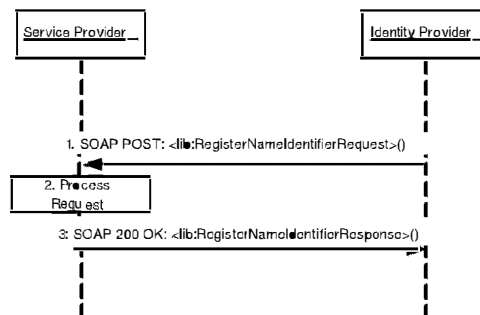


Figure 7. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for registering name identifiers

1390 3.3.1.2.1. Step 1 Initiate Profile

1391 In step 1, the identity provider sends a `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>` protocol mes-
 1392 sage to the service provider's SOAP endpoint specifying `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>`,
 1393 `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>`, and `<lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier>` as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>` will only contain a value if the service provider has
 1394 previously used the register name identifier profile.
 1395

1396 3.3.1.2.2. Step 2: Process Request

1397 Service provider records new `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>`.

1398 3.3.1.2.3. Step 3: Response to Register Name Identifier

1399 The service provider, after successfully registering the new `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` provided by the
 1400 identity provider, MUST respond with a `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierResponse>` according to the processing
 1401 rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1402 3.3.2. Register Name Identifier Initiated at Service Provider

1403 A service provider may register, or change a `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>` which is a name identifier it expects the identity provider to use when communicating with it about the Principal. Until it
 1404 registers a `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>`, an identity provider will continue to use the current
 1405 `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` when referring to the Principal.
 1406

1407 3.3.2.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1408 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on the use of an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a register name identifier
 1409 message from the service provider to the identity provider.

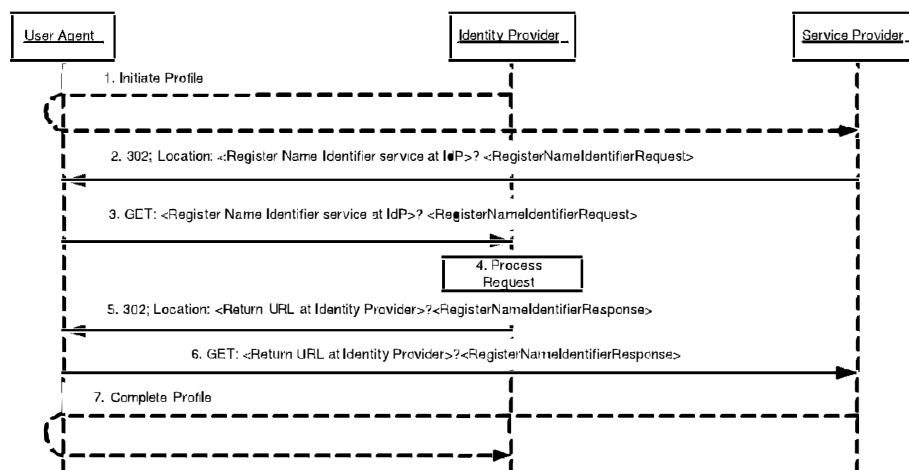


Figure 8. SP-Initiated Register Name Identifier Profile.

The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

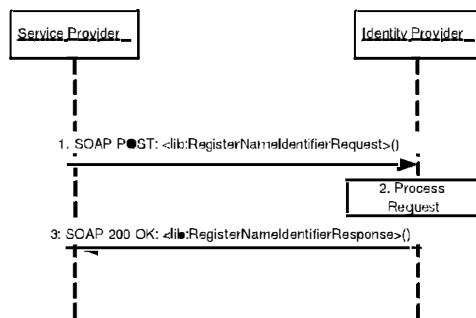
URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-sp-http>

A HTTP-redirect-based register name identifier profile can be self-initiated by a service provider to change the `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>`. This does not normatively specify when and how the service provider can initiate this profile; that is left to the discretion of the service provider. The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on

1417 using HTTP 302 redirects to communicate register name identifier messages from the service provider to the identity
 1418 provider. The service provider effects a `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>` change in the identity provider
 1419 via a URL redirection. For a discussion of the interactions and processing steps, refer to Section 3.3.1.1. When
 1420 reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and identity provider in the interaction diagram
 1421 and processing steps 2-6. See Figure 8. Note that in step 4 the old `SPProvidedNameIdentifier` SHOULD be removed
 1422 at the IdP.

1423 3.3.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1424 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using SOAP over HTTP to communicate register name identifier messages
 1425 from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and processing steps, refer to
 1426 Section 3.3.1.2. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and identity provider in
 1427 the interaction diagram and processing steps. See Figure 9.



1428

1429 **Figure 9. SP-Initiated SOAP/HTTP-based profile for registering name identifiers**

1430 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1431 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/rni-sp-soap`

1432 In step 1, the service provider sends a `<lib:RegisterNameIdentifierRequest>` protocol mes-
 1433 sage to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint specifying `<lib:SPProvidedNameIdentifier>`,
 1434 `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>`, and `<lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier>` as defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The `<lib:OldProvidedNameIdentifier>` will only contain a value if the service provider has
 1435 previously used the register name identifier profile.
 1436

1437 3.4. Identity Federation Termination Notification Profiles

1438 The Liberty identity federation termination notification profiles specify how service providers and identity providers
 1439 are notified of federation termination (also known as defederation).

1440 **Note:**

1441 Other means of federation termination are possible, such as federation expiration and termination of business
 1442 agreements between service providers and identity providers. These means of federation termination are
 1443 outside the scope of this specification.

1444 Identity federation termination can be initiated at either the identity provider or the service provider. The Principal
 1445 SHOULD have been authenticated by the provider at which identity federation termination is being initiated. The
 1446 available profiles are defined in Section 3.4.1 and Section 3.4.2, depending on whether the identity federation
 1447 termination notification process was initiated at the identity provider or service provider:

- 1448 • Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Identity Provider

-
- 1449 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the identity provider and the
1450 service provider.
- 1451 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the identity provider to the service provider.
- 1452 • Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Service Provider
- 1453 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate between the service provider and the
1454 identity provider.
- 1455 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on a SOAP call from the service provider to the identity provider.
- 1456 The interactions and processing rules for the SOAP/HTTP-based and HTTP-redirect-based profiles are essentially the
1457 same regardless of whether federation termination notification was initiated at the service provider or at the identity
1458 provider.
- 1459 The identity federation termination notification profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in
1460 [LibertyMetadata]:
- 1461 • FederationTerminationServiceURL - The URL at the service provider or identity provider to which identity
1462 federation termination notifications are sent. It is documented in these profiles as "federation termination service
1463 URL."
- 1464 • FederationTerminationServiceReturnURL - The URL used by the service provider or identity provider
1465 when redirecting the user agent at the end of the federation termination notification profile process.
- 1466 • FederationTerminationNotificationProtocolProfile - Used by the identity provider to determine
1467 which federation termination notification profile MUST be used when communicating with the service provider.
- 1468 • SOAPEndpoint - The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty SOAP
1469 messages are sent.

1470 3.4.1. Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Identity Provider

1471 The profiles in Section 3.4.1.1 and Section 3.4.1.2 are specific to identity federation termination when initiated at the
1472 identity provider. Effectively, when using these profiles, the identity provider is stating to the service provider that it
1473 will no longer provide the Principal's identity information to the service provider and that the identity provider will no
1474 longer respond to any requests by the service provider on behalf of the Principal.

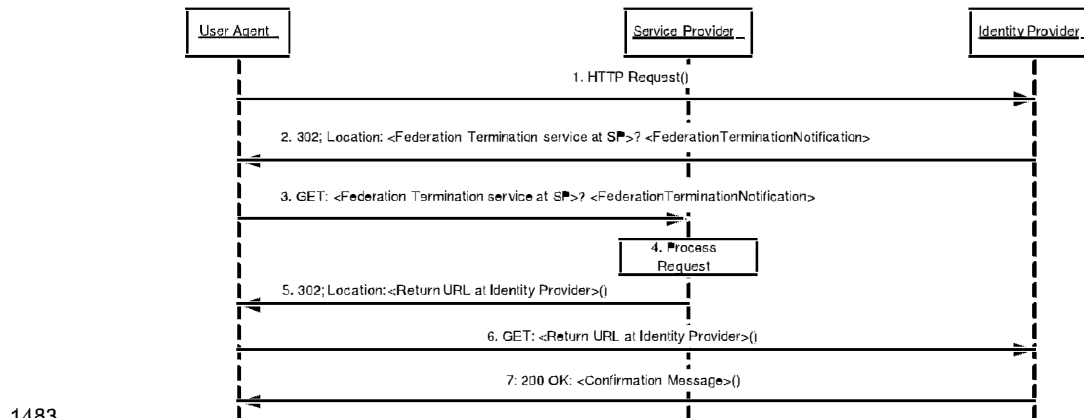
1475 3.4.1.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1476 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on using HTTP 302 redirect to communicate federation termination notification
1477 messages from the identity provider to the service provider. See Figure 10.

1478 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1479 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-idp-http>

1480 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element FederationTerminationNotification-
1481 ProtocolProfile when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving feder-
1482 ation termination notifications via an HTTP 302 redirect.



1483

1484

Figure 10. HTTP-redirect-based profile for federation termination

1485 This profile description assumes the following preconditions:

- 1486 • The Principal's identity at the service provider is federated with his/her identity at the identity provider.
- 1487 • The Principal has requested to the identity provider that the federation be terminated.
- 1488 • The Principal has authenticated with the identity provider.

1489 3.4.1.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Federation Termination Service

1490 In step 1, the user agent accesses the identity federation termination service URL at the identity provider specifying
 1491 the service provider with which identity federation termination should occur. How the service provider is specified is
 1492 implementation-dependent and, as such, is out of the scope of this specification.

1493 3.4.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Service Provider

1494 In step 2, the identity provider's federation termination service URL responds and redirects the user agent to the
 1495 federation termination service at the service provider.

1496 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1497 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's federation termination service URL.
- 1498 • The service provider's federation termination service URI MUST specify https as the URI scheme; if another
 1499 scheme is specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
- 1500 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the
 1501 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with
 1502 formatting as specified in Section 3.1.2.

1503 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1504
1505 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1506 <other headers>
1507 Location : https://<Service Provider Federation Termination service URL>?<query>
1508 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1509

1510 where:

1511 <Service Provider Federation Termination service URL>

1512 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the federation termination service URL at
1513 the service provider.

1514 <query>= ...<URL-encoded FederationTerminationNotification>...

1515 The <query> component MUST contain a single terminate federation request.

1516 3.4.1.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Federation Termination Service

1517 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's federation termination service URL with the
1518 <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect re-
1519 quest.

1520 3.4.1.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Notification

1521 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> according to
1522 the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1523 The service provider MAY remove any locally stored references to the name identifier it received from the identity
1524 provider in the <lib:FederationTerminationNotification>.

1525 3.4.1.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Return URL

1526 In step 5, the service provider's federation termination service responds and redirects the user agent back to identity
1527 provider using a return URL location specified in the FederationTerminationServiceReturnURL metadata element.
1528 If the URL-encoded <lib:FederationTerminationNotification> message received in step 3 contains a
1529 parameter named RelayState, then the service provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same
1530 RelayState parameter and its value in its response to the identity provider.

1531 No success or failure message should be conveyed in this HTTP redirect. The sole purpose of this redirect is to return
1532 the user agent to the identity provider where the federation termination process began.

1533 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

1534
1535 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1536 <other headers>
1537 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL>?<query>
1538 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1539
1540

1541 where:

1542 <Identity Provider Service Return URL>

1543 This element provides the components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1544 <query>= . . .RelayState=<. . .>

1545 The <query> component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the
1546 URL-encoded federation termination message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step
1547 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <query> component.

1548 **3.4.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Return URL**

1549 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1550 **3.4.1.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation**

1551 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of identity federation termination
1552 with the specific service provider.

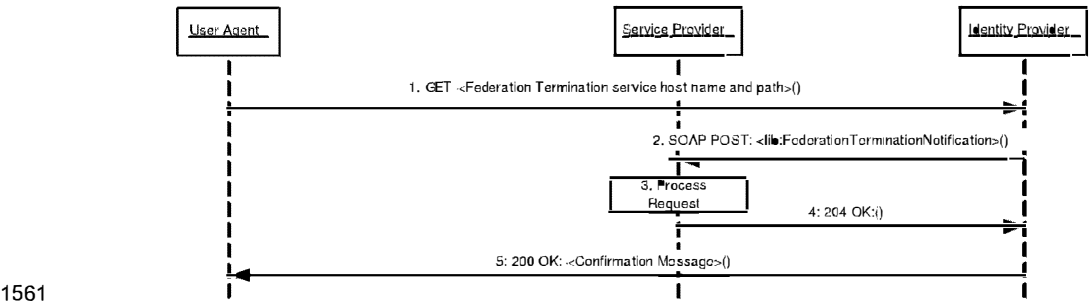
1553 **3.4.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile**

1554 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using asynchronous SOAP over HTTP to communicate federation termination
1555 notification messages from the identity provider to the service provider. See Figure 11.

1556 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1557 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-idp-soap>

1558 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element FederationTerminationNotification-
1559 ProtocolProfile when the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving feder-
1560 ation termination notifications via SOAP over HTTP.



1562 **Figure 11. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for federation termination**

1563 This profile description assumes the following preconditions:

- 1564 • The Principal's identity at the service provider is federated with his/her identity at the identity provider.
- 1565 • The Principal has authenticated with the identity provider.
- 1566 • The Principal has requested that the identity provider terminate the federation.

1567 3.4.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Federation Termination Service

1568 In step 1, the user agent accesses the identity federation termination service URL at the identity provider specifying
 1569 the service provider for with which identity federation termination should occur. How the service provider is specified
 1570 is implementation-dependent and, as such, is out of the scope of this specification.

1571 3.4.1.2.2. Step 2: Notification of Federation Termination

1572 In step 2, the identity provider sends an asynchronous SOAP over HTTP notification message to the service provider's
 1573 SOAP endpoint. The SOAP message MUST contain exactly one `<lib:FederationTerminationNotification>`
 1574 element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1575 If a SOAP fault occurs, the identity provider SHOULD employ best effort to resolve the fault condition and resend the
 1576 federation termination notification message to the service provider.

1577 3.4.1.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Notification

1578 In step 3, the service provider MUST process the `<lib:FederationTerminationNotification>` according to
 1579 the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1580 The service provider MAY remove any locally stored references to the name identifier it received from the identity
 1581 provider in the `<lib:FederationTerminationNotification>`.

1582 3.4.1.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Notification

1583 In step 4, the service provider MUST respond to the `<lib:FederationTerminationNotification>` with an
 1584 HTTP 204 OK response.

1585 3.4.1.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation

1586 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of identity federation termination
 1587 with the specific service provider.

1588 3.4.2. Federation Termination Notification Initiated at Service Provider

1589 The profiles in Section 3.4.2.1 and Section 3.4.2.2 are specific to identity federation termination notification when
 1590 initiated by a Principal at the service provider. Effectively, when using this profile, the service provider is stating to the
 1591 identity provider that the Principal has requested that the identity provider no longer provide the Principal's identity
 1592 information to the service provider and that service provider will no longer ask the identity provider to do anything on
 1593 the behalf of the Principal.

1594 It is RECOMMENDED that the service provider, after initiating or receiving a federation termination notification,
 1595 invalidate the local session for the Principal that was authenticated at the identity provider with which federation has
 1596 been terminated. If the Principal was locally authenticated at the service provider, the service provider MAY continue
 1597 to maintain a local session for the Principal. If the Principal wants to engage in a single sign-on session with identity
 1598 provider again, the service provider MUST first federate with identity provider the given Principal.

1599 3.4.2.1. HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

1600 The HTTP-redirect-based profile relies on the use of an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a federation termination
 1601 notification message from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and
 1602 processing steps, refer to Section 3.4.1.1. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider
 1603 and identity provider in the interaction diagram and processing steps.

1604 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1605 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-sp-http`

1606 This URI identifier is really only meant for service provider consumption and as such is not needed in any provider
1607 metadata.

1608 **3.4.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile**

1609 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using asynchronous SOAP over HTTP to communicate federation termination
1610 notification messages from the service provider to the identity provider. For a discussion of the interactions and
1611 processing steps, refer to 3.4.1.2. When reviewing that profile, interchange all references to service provider and
1612 identity provider in the interaction diagram and processing steps.

1613 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1614 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/fedterm-sp-soap>

1615 This URI identifier is really only meant for service provider consumption and as such is not needed in any provider
1616 metadata.

1617 **3.5. Single Logout Profiles**

1618 The single logout profiles synchronize session logout functionality across all sessions that were authenticated by a
1619 particular identity provider. The single logout can be initiated at either the identity provider or the service provider.
1620 In either case, the identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider with which it
1621 has established a session for the Principal. The negotiation of which single logout profile the identity provider uses
1622 to communicate with each service provider is based upon the SingleLogoutProtocolProfile provider metadata element
1623 defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1624 The available profiles are defined in Section 3.5.1 and Section 3.5.2, depending on whether the single logout is initiated
1625 at the identity provider or service provider:

1626 • *Single Logout Initiated at Identity Provider*

1627 • HTTP-Based: Relies on using either HTTP 302 redirects or HTTP GET requests to communicate logout
1628 requests from an identity provider to the service providers.

1629 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate logout requests from an identity
1630 provider to the service providers.

1631 • *Single Logout Initiated at Service Provider*

1632 • HTTP-Redirect-Based: Relies on an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a logout request with the identity
1633 provider.

1634 • SOAP/HTTP-Based: Relies on SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate a logout request from a service
1635 provider to an identity provider.

1636 The single logout profiles make use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

1637 • SingleLogoutServiceURL — The URL at the service provider or identity provider to which single logout
1638 requests are sent. It is described in these profiles as "single logout service URL."

- 1639 • `SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL`— The URL used by the service provider when redirecting the user agent to
1640 the identity provider at the end of the single logout profile process.
- 1641 • `SingleLogoutProtocolProfile` — Used by the identity provider to determine which single logout request
1642 profile MUST be used when communicating with the service provider.
- 1643 • `SOAPEndpoint` — The SOAP endpoint location at the service provider or identity provider to which Liberty
1644 SOAP messages are sent.

1645 **3.5.1. Single Logout Initiated at Identity Provider**

1646 The profiles in 3.5.1.1 through 3.5.1.2 are specific to a single logout when initiated by a user agent at the identity
1647 provider.

1648 **3.5.1.1. HTTP-Based Profile**

1649 The HTTP-based profile defines two possible implementations that an identity provider may use. The first
1650 implementation relies on using HTTP 302 redirects, while the second uses HTTP GET requests. The choice of
1651 implementation is entirely dependent upon the type of user experience the identity provider provides.

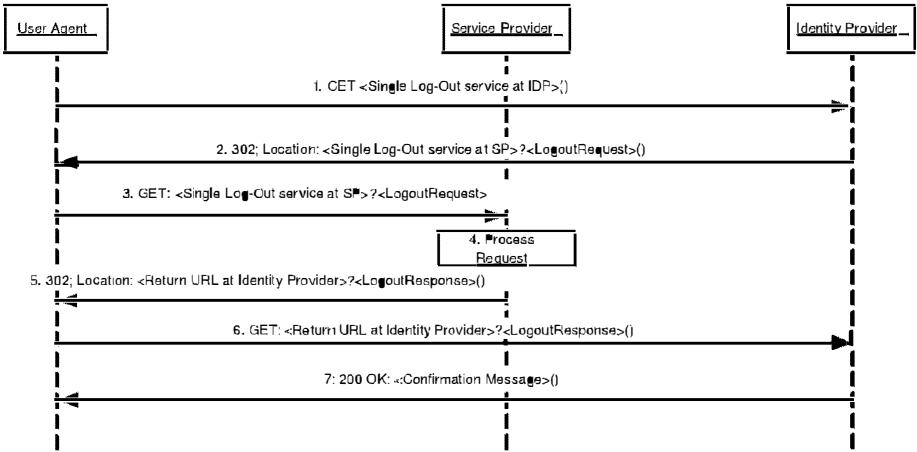
1652 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing either implementation for this specific profile:

1653 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-idp-http`

1654 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `SingleLogoutProtocolProfile` when
1655 the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving logout requests via either an
1656 HTTP redirect or an HTTP GET.

1657 **3.5.1.1.1. HTTP-Redirect Implementation**

1658 The HTTP-Redirect implementation uses HTTP 302 redirects to communicate a logout request to each service provider
1659 for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session if the
1660 service provider indicated a preference to receive logout requests via the HTTP based profile. See Figure 12.



1661

1662 **Figure 12. HTTP-Redirect implementation for single logout initiated at identity provider**

1663 **Notes:**

1664 Steps 2 through 6 may be an iterative process for requesting logouts by each service provider that has been
1665 issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive
1666 logout requests via the HTTP based profile.

1667 [RFC2616] indicates a client should detect infinite redirection loops because such loops generate network
 1668 traffic for each redirection. This requirement was introduced because previous versions of the specification
 1669 recommended a maximum of five redirections. Content developers should be aware that some clients might
 1670 implement such a fixed limitation.

1671 **3.5.1.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider**

1672 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider indicating that all service
 1673 providers for which this identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session
 1674 must be notified of session termination.

1675 **3.5.1.1.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Single Logout Service at the Service Provider**

1676 In step 2, the identity provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent to the single logout service
 1677 URL at each service provider for which the identity provider has provided an authentication assertion during the
 1678 Principal's current session with the identity provider.

1679 The redirections MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1680 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the service provider's single logout service URL.
- 1681 • The service provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is
 1682 specified, the identity provider MUST NOT redirect to the service provider.
- 1683 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:LogoutRequest>
 1684 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in 3.1.2.

1685 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1686 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1687 <other headers>
1688 Location : https://<Service Provider Single Log-Out service URL>?<query>
1689 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1690
1691
```

1692 where:

```
1693 <Service Provider Single Log-Out service URL>
```

1694 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single logout service URL at the
 1695 service provider.

```
1696 <query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutRequest>...
```

1697 The <query> MUST contain a single logout request.

1698 **3.5.1.1.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Single Logout Service**

1699 In step 3, the user agent accesses the service provider's single logout service URL with the <lib:LogoutRequest>
 1700 information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1701 **3.5.1.1.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Request**

1702 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
 1703 [LibertyProtSchema].

1704 The service provider MUST invalidate the session(s) of the Principal referred to in the name identifier it received from
1705 the identity provider in the `<lib:LogoutRequest>`.

1706 **3.5.1.1.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Return URL**

1707 In step 5, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent back to the identity provider
1708 using the return URL location obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element. If the URL-
1709 encoded `<lib:LogoutRequest>` message received in step 3 contains a parameter named RelayState, then the service
1710 provider MUST include a `<query>` component containing the same RelayState parameter and its value in its response
1711 to the identity provider.

1712 The purpose of this redirect is to return the user agent to the identity provider so that the single logout process may
1713 continue in the same fashion with other service providers.

1714 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1715
1716 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1717 <other headers>
1718 Location : https://<Identity Provider Service Return URL>?<query>
1719 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
```

1720 where:

1721 `<Identity Provider Service Return URL>`

1722 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL at the identity provider.

1723 `<query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>`

1724 The `<query>` component MUST contain a single logout response. The `<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>` MUST
1725 contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded logout request message
1726 obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState parameter MUST
1727 NOT be specified in the `<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>`.

1728 **3.5.1.1.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Return URL**

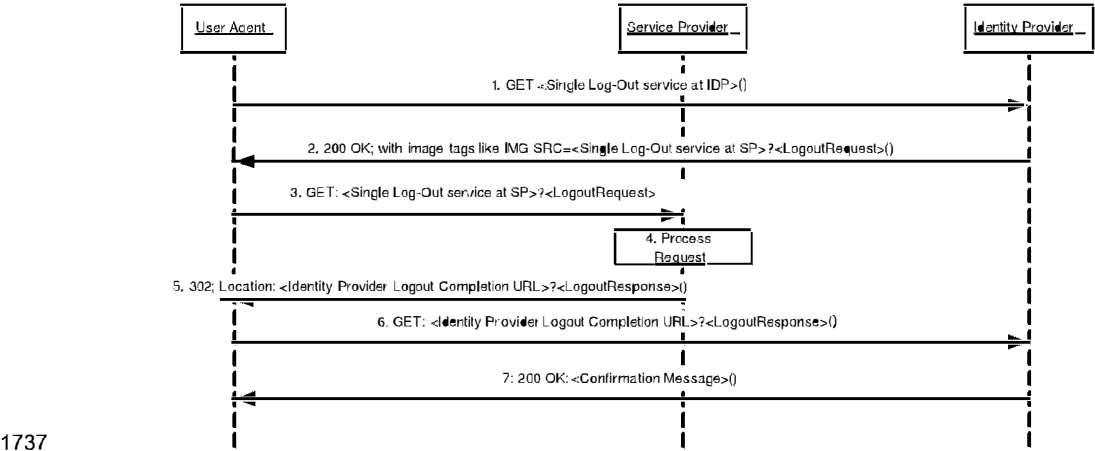
1729 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1730 **3.5.1.1.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation**

1731 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
1732 completed.

1733 **3.5.1.1.2. HTTP-GET Implementation**

1734 The HTTP-GET implementation uses HTTP GET requests to communicate logout requests to each service provider
1735 for which the identity provider has provided authentication during the Principal's current session if the service provider
1736 indicated a preference to receive logout requests via the HTTP based profile. See Figure 13.



1737

1738

Figure 13. HTTP-GET implementation for single logout initiated at identity provider

1739

Note:

1740

Steps 3 through 7 may be an iterative process for requesting logout of each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive logout requests via the HTTP based profile.

1741

1742

1743

3.5.1.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider

1744

In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider indicating that all service providers for which this identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session must be notified of session termination and requested to logout the Principal.

1745

1746

1747

3.5.1.1.2.2. Step 2: HTML Page Returned to User Agent with Image Tags

1748

In step 2, the identity provider's single logout service responds with an HTML page that includes image tags referencing the logout service URL for each of the service providers for which the identity provider has provided an authentication assertion during the Principal's current session. The list of image tags MUST be sent in a standard HTTP 200 response to the user agent.

1749

1750

1751

1752

The image tag loads on the HTML page MUST adhere to the following rules:

1753

- The SRC attribute MUST be set to the specific service provider's single logout service URL.

1754

- The service provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme.

1755

- The service provider's single logout service URL MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:LogoutRequest> protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in 3.1.2.

1756

1757

1758 3.5.1.1.2.3. Step 3: Accessing the Service Provider Single Logout Service

1759 In step 3, the user agent, as a result of each image load, accesses the service provider's single logout service URL with
 1760 <lib:LogoutRequest> information attached to the URL. This step may occur multiple times if the HTTP response
 1761 includes multiple image tag statements (one for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions
 1762 during the Principal's current session).

1763 3.5.1.1.2.4. Step 4: Processing the Request

1764 In step 4, the service provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
 1765 [LibertyProtSchema].

1766 The service provider MUST invalidate the session of the Principal referred to in the name identifier it received from
 1767 the identity provider in the <lib:LogoutRequest>.

1768 3.5.1.1.2.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Identity Provider Logout Completion URL

1769 In step 5, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the image load back to the identity
 1770 provider's logout completion URL. This location will typically point to an image that will be loaded by the user agent
 1771 to indicate that the logout is complete (for example, a checkmark).

1772 The logout completion URL is obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element.

1773 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1774
1775 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1776 <other headers>
1777 Location : https://<Identity Provider Logout Completion URL>?<query>
1778 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
```

1779 where:

1780 <Identity Provider Logout Completion URI>

1781 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the identity provider logout completion
 1782 URI at the identity provider.

1783 <query>=...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>

1784 The <query> component MUST contain a single logout response. The <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>
 1785 component MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded
 1786 logout request message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in step 3 then a RelayState
 1787 message MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>.

1788 3.5.1.1.2.6. Step 6: Accessing the Identity Provider Logout Completion URL

1789 In step 6, the user agent accesses the identity provider's logout completion URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1790 3.5.1.1.2.7. Step 7: Confirmation

1791 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
 1792 completed.

1793 Note:

1794 One method for seamlessly returning the user agent back to the identity provider is for the HTML page
 1795 generated in step 2 to include a script that runs when the page is completely loaded (all logouts completed)
 1796 that will initiate the redirect to the identity provider.

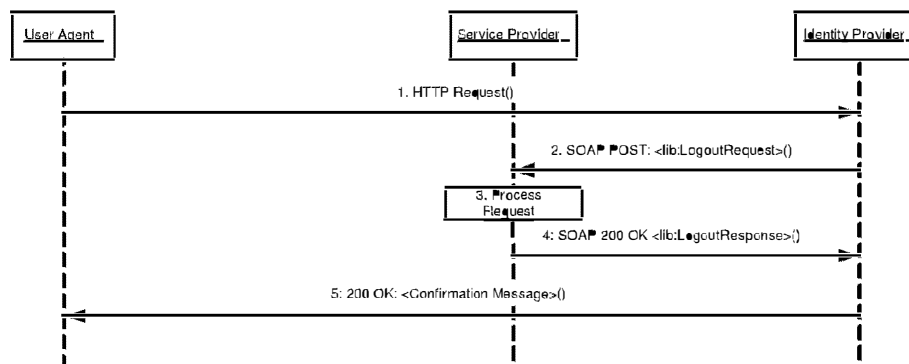
1797 **3.5.1.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile**

1798 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile uses SOAP over HTTP messaging to communicate a logout request to each service
 1799 provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session if
 1800 the service provider indicated a preference to receive logout request via the SOAP/HTTP-based profile. See Figure 14.

1801 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1802 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-idp-soap`

1803 This URI identifier MUST be specified in the service provider metadata element `SingleLogoutProtocolProfile` when
 1804 the service provider intends to indicate to the identity provider a preference for receiving logout requests via SOAP
 1805 over HTTP.



1806

1807 **Figure 14. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for single logout initiated at identity provider**

1808 **Note:**

1809 Steps 2 through 4 may be an iterative process for each service provider that has been issued authentication
 1810 assertions during the Principal's current session and has indicated a preference to receive logout requests via
 1811 the SOAP/HTTP message profile.

1812 **3.5.1.2.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service**

1813 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the identity provider via an HTTP request.

1814 **3.5.1.2.2. Step 2: Logout Request**

1815 In step 2, the identity provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the SOAP endpoint of each service provider
 1816 for which it provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session. The SOAP message MUST
 1817 contain exactly one `<lib:LogoutRequest>` element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined
 1818 in [LibertyProtSchema].

1819 If a SOAP fault occurs, the identity provider SHOULD employ best efforts to resolve the fault condition and resend
 1820 the single logout request to the service provider.

1821 **3.5.1.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Logout Request**

1822 In step 3, the service provider MUST process the `<lib:LogoutRequest>` according to the rules defined in
 1823 [LibertyProtSchema].

1824 The service provider MUST invalidate the session for the Principal specified by the name identifier provided by the
 1825 identity provider in the `<lib:LogoutRequest>`.

1826 **3.5.1.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Request**

1827 In step 4, the service provider MUST respond to the `<lib:LogoutRequest>` with a SOAP 200 OK
1828 `<lib:LogoutResponse>` message.

1829 **3.5.1.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation**

1830 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of single logout has completed.

1831 **3.5.2. Single Logout Initiated at Service Provider**

1832 The profiles in Section 3.5.2.1 and Section 3.5.2.2 are specific to the Principal's initiation of the single logout request
1833 process at the service provider.

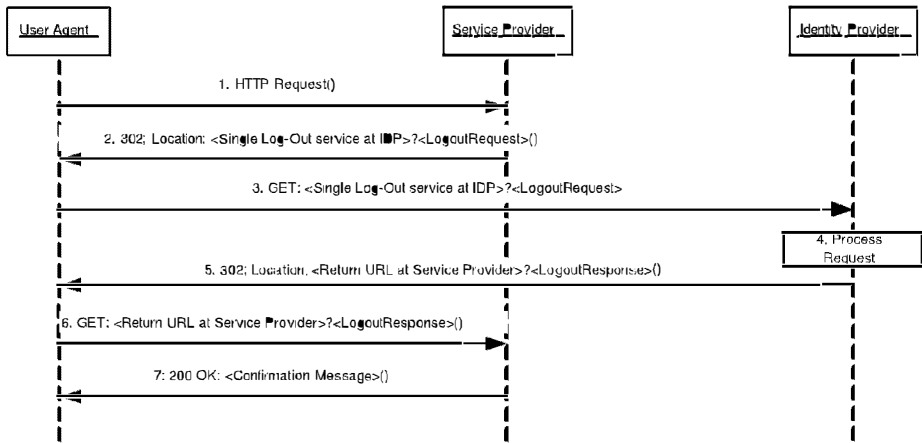
1834 **3.5.2.1. HTTP-Based Profile**

1835 The HTTP-based profile relies on using an HTTP 302 redirect to communicate a logout request with the identity
1836 provider. The identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider with which it has
1837 established a session for the Principal using the service provider's preferred profile for logout request from the identity
1838 provider (see Section 3.5.1). See Figure 15.

1839 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1840 URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-sp-http`

1841 This URI identifier is intended for service provider consumption and is not needed in provider metadata.



1842

1843 **Figure 15. HTTP-redirect-based profile for single logout initiated at service provider**

1844 **Note:**

1845 Step 4 may involve an iterative process by the identity provider to implement the preferred profile for logout
1846 requests for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current
1847 session.

1848 **3.5.2.1.1. Step 1: Accessing the Single Logout Service at the Service Provider**

1849 In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the service provider indicating that session logout
1850 is desired at the associated identity provider and all service providers for which this identity provider has provided

1851 authentication assertions during the Principal's current session. If a current session exists for the Principal at the
1852 service provider, it is RECOMMENDED that the service provider terminate that session prior to step 2.

1853 **3.5.2.1.2. Step 2: Redirecting to the Single Logout Service at the Identity Provider**

1854 In step 2, the service provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent to the single logout service
1855 URL at the identity provider.

1856 The redirection MUST adhere to the following rules:

- 1857 • The Location HTTP header MUST be set to the identity provider's single logout service URL..
- 1858 • The identity provider's single logout service URL MUST specify https as the URL scheme; if another scheme is
1859 specified, the service provider MUST NOT redirect to the identity provider.
- 1860 • The Location HTTP header MUST include a <query> component containing the <lib:LogoutRequest>
1861 protocol message as defined in [LibertyProtSchema] with formatting as specified in 3.1.2.

1862 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1863 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1864 <other headers>
1865 Location : https://<Identity Provider single log-out service URL>?<query>
1866 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
```

1869 where:

1870 <Identity Provider single log-out service URL>

1871 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the single logout service URL at the
1872 identity provider.

1873 <query>= ...<URL-encoded LogoutRequest>...

1874 The <query> MUST contain a single logout request.

1875 **3.5.2.1.3. Step 3: Accessing the Identity Provider Single Logout Service**

1876 In step 3, the user agent accesses the identity provider's single logout service URL with the <lib:LogoutRequest>
1877 information attached to the URL fulfilling the redirect request.

1878 **3.5.2.1.4. Step 4: Processing the Request**

1879 In step 4, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in
1880 [LibertyProtSchema].

1881 Each service provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's
1882 current session MUST be notified via the service provider's preferred profile for logout request from the identity
1883 provider (see Section 3.5.1).

1884 The identity provider's current session with the Principal MUST be terminated, and no more authentication assertions
1885 for the Principal are to be given to service providers.

1886 **3.5.2.1.5. Step 5: Redirecting to the Service Provider Return URL**

1887 In step 5, the identity provider's single logout service responds and redirects the user agent back to service provider
 1888 using the return URL location obtained from the SingleLogoutServiceReturnURL metadata element. If the URL-
 1889 encoded <lib:LogoutRequest> message received in step 3 contains a parameter named RelayState, then the identity
 1890 provider MUST include a <query> component containing the same RelayState parameter and its value in its response
 1891 to the service provider.

1892 The purpose of this redirect is to return the user agent to the service provider.

1893 The HTTP response MUST take the following form:

```
1894
1895 <HTTP-Version> 302 <Reason Phrase>
1896 <other headers>
1897 Location : https://<Service Provider Return Service URL>?<query>
1898 <other HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 components>
1899
```

1900 where:

1901 <Service Provider Service Return URL>

1902 This element provides the host name, port number, and path components of the return URL location at the service
 1903 provider.

1904 <query>- ...<URL-encoded LogoutResponse>

1905 The <query> component MUST contain a single logout response. The <URL-encoded LogoutResponse> com-
 1906 ponent MUST contain the identical RelayState parameter and its value that was received in the URL-encoded logout
 1907 request message obtained in step 3. If no RelayState parameter was provided in the step 3 message, then a RelayState
 1908 parameter MUST NOT be specified in the <URL-encoded LogoutResponse>.

1909 3.5.2.1.6. Step 6: Accessing the Service Provider Return URL

1910 In step 6, the user agent accesses the service provider's return URL location fulfilling the redirect request.

1911 3.5.2.1.7. Step 7: Confirmation

1912 In step 7, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of a single logout has been
 1913 completed.

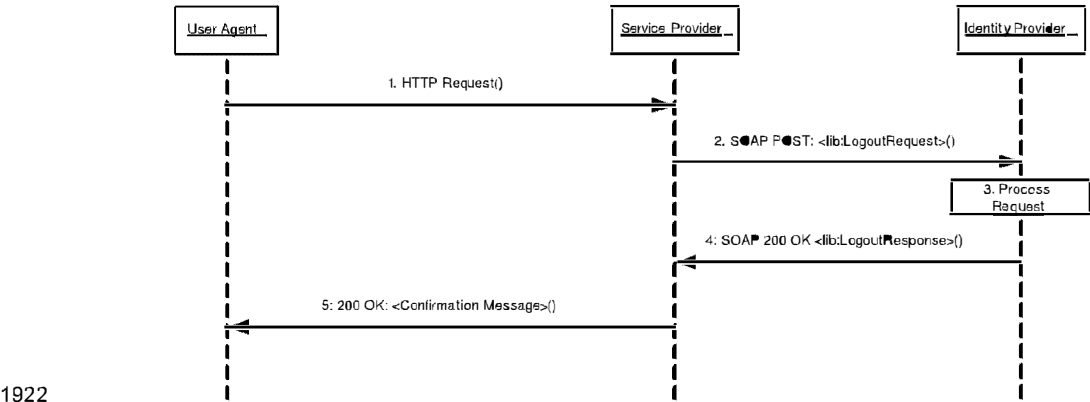
1914 3.5.2.2. SOAP/HTTP-Based Profile

1915 The SOAP/HTTP-based profile relies on using SOAP over HTTP messages to communicate a logout request to
 1916 the identity provider. The identity provider will then communicate a logout request to each service provider it has
 1917 established a session with for the Principal via the service provider's preferred profile for logout requests from the
 1918 identity provider (see Section 3.5.1). See Figure 16.

1919 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

1920 URI: <http://projectliberty.org/profiles/slo-sp-soap>

1921 This URI identifier is intended for service provider consumption and is not needed in provider metadata.



1922

1923

Figure 16. SOAP/HTTP-based profile for single logout initiated at service provider

1924

Note:

1925

Step 3 may involve an iterative process by the identity provider to implement the preferred profile for logout requests for each service provider that has been issued authentication assertions during the Principal's current session.

1926

1927

1928

3.5.2.2.1. Step 1: Accessing Single Logout Service

1929

In step 1, the user agent accesses the single logout service URL at the service provider via an HTTP request.

1930

3.5.2.2.2. Step 2: Logout Request

1931

In step 2, the service provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the identity provider's SOAP endpoint. The SOAP message MUST contain exactly one <lib:LogoutRequest> element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules as defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1932

1933

1934

If a SOAP fault occurs, the service provider SHOULD employ best efforts to resolve the fault condition and resend the single logout request to the identity provider.

1935

1936

3.5.2.2.3. Step 3: Processing the Logout Request

1937

In step 3, the identity provider MUST process the <lib:LogoutRequest> according to the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

1938

1939

Each service provider for which the identity provider has provided authentication assertions during the Principal's current session MUST be requested to logout the Principal via the service provider's preferred profile for logout requests from the identity provider. If the identity provider determines that one or more of service providers to which it has provided assertions regarding this Principal do not support the SOAP profiles for the single logout, the identity provider MUST return a <lib:LogoutResponse> containing a status code of <lib:UnsupportedProfile>. The service provider MUST then re-submit its LogoutRequest via the HTTP profile described above.

1940

1941

1942

1943

1944

1945

Note:

1946

If the identity provider is proxying authentication, based on authentication assertions from a second (proxied) identity provider (see Dynamic Proxying of Identity Providers in [LibertyProtSchema]), then the identity provider MUST follow these processing steps, *prior* to attempting to propagate the Single Logout request to service providers for which they have provided authentication assertions (as described above):

1947

1948

1949

1950 1. If the identity provider determines that the proxied identity provider does not support the SOAP/HTTP profile of
 1951 Single Logout, it MUST respond to the requesting service provider with a `<lib:LogoutResponse>` containing
 1952 a status code of `<lib:UnsupportedProfile>`.

1953 2. If the identity provider is able to proceed with SOAP/HTTP-based Single Logout, then it MUST initiate the SP-
 1954 initiated SOAP/HTTP profile of Single Logout described in Section 3.5.2.2, *acting in the role of service provider*
 1955 toward the proxied identity provider. The proxied identity provider (in processing the SP-initiated SLO request)
 1956 may determine that some service provider for which it provided authentication assertions does not support the
 1957 SOAP/HTTP profile of Single Logout, and might thus return a `<lib:UnsupportedProfile>` status response.
 1958 If this situation occurs, the proxying identity provider MUST return a `<lib:UnsupportedProfile>` status
 1959 response to the requesting service provider.

1960 The identity provider's current session with the Principal MUST be terminated, and no more authentication assertions
 1961 for the Principal are to be given to service providers.

1962 3.5.2.2.4. Step 4: Responding to the Logout Request

1963 In step 4, the identity provider MUST respond to the `<lib:LogoutRequest>` with a SOAP 200 OK
 1964 `<lib:LogoutResponse>` message.

1965 3.5.2.2.5. Step 5: Confirmation

1966 In step 5, the user agent is sent an HTTP response that confirms the requested action of single logout was completed.

1967 3.6. Identity Provider Introduction

1968 This section defines the profiles by which a service provider discovers which identity providers a Principal is using.
 1969 In identity federation networks having more than one identity provider, service providers need a means to discover
 1970 which identity providers a Principal uses. The introduction profile relies on a cookie that is written in a domain that
 1971 is common between identity providers and service providers in an identity federation network. The domain that the
 1972 identity federation network predetermines for a deployment is known as the common domain in this specification, and
 1973 the cookie containing the list of identity providers is known as the common domain cookie.

1974 Implementation of this profile is OPTIONAL. Whether identity providers and service providers implement this profile
 1975 is a policy and deployment issue outside the scope of this specification. Also, which entities host web servers in the
 1976 common domain is a deployment issue and is outside the scope of this specification.

1977 3.6.1. Common Domain Cookie

1978 The name of the cookie MUST be `_liberty_idp`. The format of the cookie content MUST be a list of base64-encoded
 1979 (see [RFC2045]) identity provider succinct IDs separated by a single white space character. The identity provider IDs
 1980 MUST adhere to the creation rules as defined in Section 3.2.2.2. The identity provider ID is a metadata element, as
 1981 defined in [LibertyMetadata].

1982 The common domain cookie writing service SHOULD append the identity provider ID to the list. If the identity
 1983 provider ID is already present in the list, it MAY remove and append it when authentication of the Principal occurs.
 1984 The intent is that the most recently established identity provider session is the last one in the list.

1985 The cookie MUST be set with no Path prefix or a Path prefix of `"/`. The Domain MUST be set to `"[common-domain]"`
 1986 where `[common-domain]` is the common domain established within the identity federation network for use with the
 1987 introduction protocol. The cookie MUST be marked as Secure.

1988 The cookie SHOULD be URL-encoded.

1989 Cookie syntax should be in accordance with [RFC2965] or [NetscapeCookie].

1990 The cookie MAY be either session or persistent. This choice may be made within an identity federation network, but
 1991 should apply uniformly to all providers in the network (see [LibertyImplGuide]) for more details on cookies).

1992 **3.6.2. Setting the Common Domain Cookie**

1993 After the identity provider authenticates a Principal, it MAY set the common domain cookie. The means by which
 1994 the identity provider sets the cookie are implementation-specific so long as the cookie is successfully set with the
 1995 parameters given above. One possible implementation strategy follows and should be considered non-normative. The
 1996 identity provider may:

- 1997 • Have previously established a DNS and IP alias for itself in the common domain
- 1998 • Redirect the user agent to itself using the DNS alias using a URL specifying "https" as the URL scheme. The
 1999 structure of the URL is private to the implementation and may include session information needed to identify the
 2000 user-agent.
- 2001 • Set the cookie on the redirected user agent using the parameters specified above.
- 2002 • Redirect the user agent back to itself, or, if appropriate, to the service provider.

2003 **3.6.3. Obtaining the Common Domain Cookie**

2004 When a service provider needs to discover which identity providers the Principal uses, it invokes a protocol exchange
 2005 designed to present the common domain cookie to the service provider after it is read by an HTTP server in the
 2006 common domain.

2007 If the HTTP server in the common domain is operated by the service provider, the service provider MAY redirect the
 2008 user agent to an identity provider's intersite transfer service for an optimized single sign-on process.

2009 The specific means by which the service provider reads the cookie are implementation-specific so long as it is able to
 2010 cause the user agent to present cookies that have been set with the parameters given in Section 3.6.1. One possible
 2011 implementation strategy is described as follows and should be considered non-normative. Additionally, it may be
 2012 sub-optimal for some applications.

- 2013 • Have previously established a DNS and IP alias for itself in the common domain
- 2014 • Redirect the user agent to itself using the DNS alias using a URL specifying "https" as the URL scheme. The
 2015 structure of the URL is private to the implementation and may include session information needed to identify the
 2016 user-agent.
- 2017 • Set the cookie on the redirected user agent using the parameters specified above
- 2018 • Redirect the user agent back to itself, or, if appropriate, to the service provider.

3.7. NameIdentifier Mapping Profile

The NameIdentifier mapping profile specifies how a service provider may obtain a NameIdentifier for a Principal it has federated in the "namespace" of a different service provider, by querying an identity provider that has federated the Principal with both service providers. This NameIdentifier may be used to obtain additional information about a Principal from a SAML authority, or used for other non-specific purposes. In most cases, the encryption profile in the following section will be used to obfuscate and time-limit this identifier to restrict its use.

The NameIdentifier mapping profile makes use of the following metadata elements, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

- `NameIdentifierMappingProtocolProfile` - A URI indicating the profile of this protocol supported by the identity provider.
- `SOAPEndpoint` - The SOAP endpoint location at the identity provider to which Liberty SOAP messages are sent.

3.7.1. SOAP-based NameIdentifier Mapping

The SOAP-based profile relies on a SOAP request and response to query for and return the NameIdentifier. A requesting service provider issues a SOAP request to an identity provider, requesting a different NameIdentifier for a named Principal in the namespace of a service provider or affiliation group. This NameIdentifier may then be used to query another Liberty provider offering SAML services for additional information about the named Principal. See Figure 17.

The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

URI: `http://projectliberty.org/profiles/nim-sp-http`

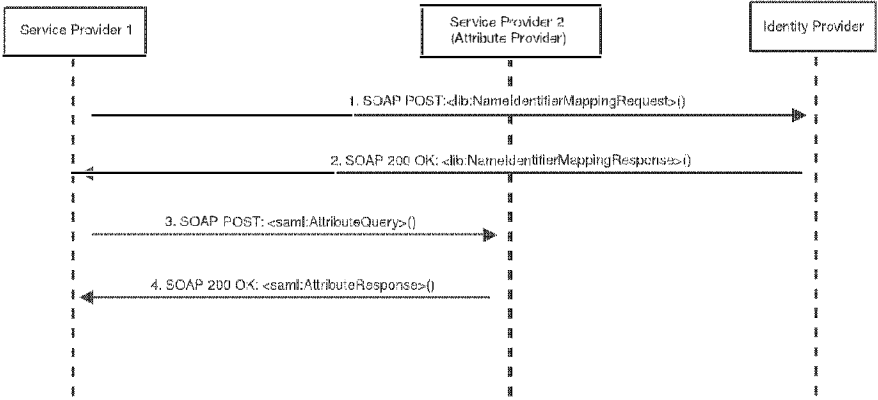


Figure 17. SOAP-based profile for name identifier mapping

3.7.1.1. Step 1: Issuance and processing of Request

In step 1, the service provider sends a SOAP over HTTP request to the SOAP endpoint of the identity provider it is querying. The SOAP message MUST contain exactly one `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest>` element in the SOAP body and adhere to the construction rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema].

The identity provider MUST process the `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest>` according to the rules defined in [LibertyProtSchema]. The identity provider is NOT required to honor the request for a mapped NameIdentifier, but it MUST respond to the request with an appropriate status.

2046 **3.7.1.2. Step 2: Responding to the Request**

2047 In step 3, the identity provider MUST respond to the `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingRequest>` with a SOAP 200
 2048 OK `<lib:NameIdentifierMappingResponse>` message.

2049 **3.7.1.3. Step 3: Requesting SAML attributes using a mapped NameIdentifier**

2050 Note: This step is not normatively specified by Liberty, and is shown only for illustrative purposes. The requesting
 2051 service provider may use the mapped NameIdentifier of the Principal to issue a `<saml:AttributeQuery>`. This
 2052 MUST adhere to the rules specified in [SAMLCore11]

2053 **3.7.1.4. Step 4: Returning a `<saml:AttributeStatement>`**

2054 Note: This step is not normatively specified by Liberty, and is shown only for illustrative purposes. A service provider
 2055 receiving a `<saml:AttributeQuery>` may return a `<saml:AttributeStatement>`. This action MUST conform
 2056 to the rules specified in [SAMLCore11].

2057 **3.7.1.5. Security Considerations**

2058 In addition to the usual considerations relating to Liberty and SAML protocols (see [SAMLCore11]), an identity
 2059 provider SHOULD encrypt or otherwise obfuscate the NameIdentifier returned to the requesting service provider, so
 2060 that it is opaque to the requester. A way of accomplishing this is described in the next section.

2061 Because the identifier gives the receiving provider a persistent way of referencing the principal, it should only be
 2062 returned subject to the policies set by the principal or other authorized party.

2063 **3.8. NameIdentifier Encryption Profile**

2064 The Liberty NameIdentifier encryption profile allows a principal's NameIdentifier to be encrypted such that only
 2065 the identity or service provider possessing the decryption key can deduce the identity of the principal when the
 2066 NameIdentifier is included in a SAML or Liberty protocol message. The identifier is encrypted in such a fashion
 2067 that it is a different value when requested by different providers or multiple times, reducing the chance for correlation
 2068 of the encrypted value across multiple logical transactions.

2069 The NameIdentifier encryption profile make use of the following metadata element, as defined in [LibertyMetadata]:

- 2070 • `KeyDescriptor` - Defines a public key to use when wrapping the keys used in encrypting data for a provider (the
 2071 key-encrypting key)

2072 3.8.1. XML Encryption-based NameIdentifier Encryption

2073 The XML Encryption-based profile relies on the use of [xmenc-core] to format and encode the resulting encrypted
2074 identifier and possibly the wrapped encryption key.

2075 The following URI-based identifier MUST be used when referencing this specific profile:

2076 URI: urn:liberty:iff:nameid:encrypted

2077 3.8.1.1. Step 1: Encrypting and encoding a NameIdentifier value.

2078 The encrypting provider first transforms the original <saml:NameIdentifier> element into a
2079 <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element, which is an extension of the original element. The NameQualifier,
2080 IssueInstant, and Nonce attributes are set as defined by [LibertyProtSchema].

2081 If not already generated for the target provider, an encryption key is generated and is then itself encrypted with the
2082 key specified in the target provider's <KeyDescriptor> metadata element with a use attribute of encryption, or
2083 with a predefined key exchanged out of band. The wrapped encryption key is placed into a <xenc:EncryptedKey>
2084 element.

2085 If the symmetric encryption key is not included, because it has been exchanged out of band, and/or is being reused,
2086 then the encrypting provider MUST include additional information in the <xenc:EncryptedData> element that
2087 indicates to the target provider which decryption key to use in decrypting the identifier. This information MUST be
2088 sufficient to identify the key to use without the target knowing the encrypting provider's identity before decryption
2089 occurs.

2090 The encryption key is then applied to the <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element, producing an
2091 <xenc:EncryptedData> element with a Type of http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmenc#Element.

2092 The resulting <xenc:EncryptedData> element, and optionally the <xenc:EncryptedKey> element, are then
2093 enclosed in an <EncryptedNameIdentifier> element. The element is base-64 encoded and the result is placed
2094 into a <saml:NameIdentifier> whose Format attribute MUST be urn:liberty:iff:nameid:encrypted.

2095 3.8.1.2. Step 2: Decoding and decrypting a NameIdentifier value.

2096 The decrypting provider first decodes the base-64 encoded data and recovers the <EncryptedNameIdentifier>
2097 element.

2098 The <xenc:EncryptedData> and optional <xenc:EncryptedKey> elements are then used to recover the symmetric
2099 encryption key and algorithm and decrypt the <EncryptableNameIdentifier> element.

2100 The provider can then examine the attributes to determine the identity federation to which the name identifier applies.

2101 3.8.2. Security Considerations

2102 The profile is designed to meet the needs of providers in addressing the security considerations of other profiles, such
2103 as the NameIdentifier Mapping Profile in the previous section. To insure the integrity of this profile, either symmetric
2104 encryption keys MUST NOT be reused, or if they are, then symmetric encryption keys MUST be reused between
2105 different principals federated with a given provider and MUST NOT be reused between different providers. It is
2106 RECOMMENDED that symmetric encryption keys, if reused, be renewed periodically. Furthermore, reuse of keys
2107 REQUIRES that a chaining mode with a unique initialization vector generated per encryption be used.

2108 4. Security Considerations

2109 4.1. Introduction

2110 This section describes security considerations associated with Liberty protocols for identity federation, single sign-on,
2111 federation termination, and single logout.

2112 Liberty protocols, schemas, bindings, and profiles inherit and use extensively the SAML protocols. Therefore, the
2113 security considerations published along with the SAML specification have direct relevance (see [SAMLCore11],
2114 [SAMLBind11], and [SAMLSec]). Throughout this section if, for any reason, a specific consideration or counter-
2115 measure does not apply or differs, notice of this fact is made; and a description of alternatives is supplied, where
2116 possible.

2117 4.2. General Requirements

2118 4.2.1. Security of SSL and TLS

2119 SSL and TLS utilize a suite of possible cipher suites. The security of the SSL or TLS session depends on the chosen
2120 cipher suite. An entity (that is, a user agent, service provider, or identity provider) that terminates an SSL or TLS
2121 connection needs to offer (or accept) suitable cipher suites during the handshake. The following list of TLS 1.0 cipher
2122 suites (or their SSL 3.0 equivalent) is recommended.

2123 • TLS_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA

2124 • TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA

2125 • TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA

2126 The above list is not exhaustive. The recommended cipher suites are among the most commonly used. Note: New
2127 cipher suites are added as they are standardized and should be considered for inclusion if they have sufficiently strong
2128 security properties. For example, it is anticipated that the AES-based cipher suites being standardized in the IETF will
2129 be widely adopted and deployed.

2130 4.2.2. Security Implementation

2131 The suitable implementation of security protocols is necessary to maintain the security of a system, including

2132 • Secure random or pseudo-random number generation

2133 • Secure storage

2134 **4.3. Classification of Threats**2135 **4.3.1. Threat Model**

2136 For an analysis of threat classifications, an Internet threat model has been used. In other words, the threat model
 2137 assumes that intermediary and end-systems participating in Liberty protocol exchanges have not been compromised.
 2138 However, where possible, the consequences and containment properties of a compromised system entity are described
 2139 and countermeasures are suggested to bolster the security posture so that the exposure from a security breach is
 2140 minimized.

2141 Given the nature of the Internet, the assumption is made that deployment is across the global Internet and, therefore,
 2142 crosses multiple administrative boundaries. Thus, an assumption is also made that the adversary has the capacity to
 2143 engage in both passive and active attacks (see Section 4.3.3).

2144 **4.3.2. Rogue and Spurious Entities**

2145 Attackers may be classified based on their capabilities and the roles that they play in launching attacks on a Liberty
 2146 system as follows:

2147 • **Rogue Entities:** Entities that misuse their privileges. The rogue actors may be Principals, user agents, service
 2148 providers, or identity providers. A rogue Principal is a legitimate participant who attempts to escalate its privileges
 2149 or masquerade as another system Principal. A rogue user agent may, for instance, misuse the relationships between
 2150 its associated Principals and an identity provider to launch certain attacks. Similarly, a rogue service provider may
 2151 be able to exploit the relationship that it has either with a Principal or with an identity provider to launch certain
 2152 attacks.

2153 • **Spurious Entities:** Entities that masquerade as a legitimate entity or are completely unknown to the system. The
 2154 spurious actors include Principals, user agents (i.e., user agents without associated legitimate Liberty Principals),
 2155 service providers, or identity providers. A spurious service provider may, for instance, pretend to be a service
 2156 provider that has a legitimate relationship with an identity provider. Similarly, a spurious Principal may be one
 2157 that pretends to be a legitimate Principal that has a relationship with either a service provider or an identity provider.

2158 **4.3.3. Active and Passive Attackers**

2159 Both rogue and spurious entities may launch active or passive attacks on the system. In a passive attack the attacker
 2160 does not inject traffic or modify traffic in any way. Such an attacker usually passively monitors the traffic flow, and the
 2161 information that is obtained in that flow may be used at a later time. An active attacker, on the other hand, is capable
 2162 of modifying existing traffic as well as injecting new traffic into the system.

2163 **4.3.4. Scenarios**

2164 The following scenarios describe possible attacks:

2165 • **Collusion:** The secret cooperation between two or more Liberty entities to launch an attack, for example,

2166 • Collusion between Principal and service provider

2167 • Collusion between Principal and identity provider

2168 • Collusion between identity provider and service provider

-
- 2169 • Collusion among two or more Principals
 - 2170 • Collusion between two or more service providers
 - 2171 • Collusion between two or more identity providers

 - 2172 • **Denial-of-Service Attacks:** The prevention of authorized access to a system resource or the delaying of system
 - 2173 operations and functions.

 - 2174 • **Man-in-the-Middle Attacks:** A form of active wiretapping attack in which the attacker intercepts and selectively
 - 2175 modifies communicated data to masquerade as one or more of the entities involved in a communication association.

 - 2176 • **Replay Attacks:** An attack in which a valid data transmission is maliciously or fraudulently repeated, either by the
 - 2177 originator or by an adversary who intercepts the data and retransmits it, possibly as part of a masquerade attack.

 - 2178 • **Session Hijacking:** A form of active wiretapping in which the attacker seizes control of a previously established
 - 2179 communication association.

2180 4.4. Threat Scenarios and Countermeasures

2181 In this section, threats that may apply to all the Liberty profiles are considered first. Threats that are specific to
 2182 individual profiles are then considered. In each discussion the threat is described as well as the countermeasures that
 2183 exist in the profile or the additional countermeasures that may be implemented to mitigate the threat.

2184 4.4.1. Common Threats for All Profiles

2185 **Threat:** Request messages sent in cleartext

2186 **Description:** Most profile protocol exchanges do not mandate that all exchanges commence over a secure communi-
 2187 cation channel. This lack of transport security potentially exposes requests and responses to both passive and active
 2188 attacks.

2189 One obvious manifestation is when the initial contact is not over a secure transport and the Liberty profile begins to
 2190 exchange messages by carrying the request message back to the user agent in the location header of a redirect.

2191 Another such manifestation could be a request or response message which carries a URI that may be resolved on a
 2192 subsequent exchange, for instance lib:AuthnContextClassRef. If this URI were to specify a less or insecure transport,
 2193 then the exchange may be vulnerable to the types of attacks described above.

2194 **Countermeasure:** Ensure that points of entry to Liberty protocol exchanges utilize the https URL <scheme> and that
 2195 all interactions for that profile consistently exchange messages over https.

2196 **Threat:** Malicious redirects into identity or service provider targets

2197 **Description:** A spurious entity could issue a redirect to a user agent so that the user agent would access a resource
 2198 that disrupts single sign-on. For example, an attacker could redirect the user agent to a logout resource of a service
 2199 provider causing the Principal to be logged out of all existing authentication sessions.

2200 **Countermeasure:** Access to resources that produce side effects could be specified with a transient qualifier that must
 2201 correspond to the current authentication session. Alternatively, a confirmation dialog could be interposed that relies
 2202 on a transient qualifier with similar semantics.

2203 **Threat:** Relay state tampering or fabrication

2204 **Description:** Some of the messages may carry a `<lib:RelayState>` element, which is recommended to be integrity-
 2205 protected by the producer and optionally confidentiality-protected. If these practices are not followed, an adversary
 2206 could trigger unwanted side effects. In addition, by not confidentiality-protecting the value of this element, a legitimate
 2207 system entity could inadvertently expose information to the identity provider or a passive attacker.

2208 **Countermeasure:** Follow the recommended practice of confidentiality- and integrity-protecting the
 2209 `<lib:RelayState>` data. Note: Because the value of this element is both produced and consumed by the
 2210 same system entity, symmetric cryptographic primitives could be utilized.

2211 4.4.2. Single Sign-On and Federation

2212 4.4.2.1. Common Interactions for All Single Sign-On and Federation Profiles

2213 **Threat:** `<lib:AuthnRequest>` sent over insecure channel

2214 **Description:** It is recommended that the initial exchange to access the intersite transfer service be conducted over
 2215 a TLS-secured transport. Not following this recommendation can expose the exchange to both passive and active
 2216 attacks.

2217 **Countermeasure:** Deploy the intersite transfer service under an https scheme.

2218 **Threat:** Unsigned `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message

2219 **Description:** The signature element of an `<lib:AuthnRequest>` is optional and thus the absence of the signature
 2220 could pose a threat to the identity provider or even the targeted service provider. For example, a spurious system entity
 2221 could generate an unsigned `<lib:AuthnRequest>` and redirect the user agent to the identity provider. The identity
 2222 provider must then consume resources.

2223 **Countermeasure:** Sign the `<lib:AuthnRequest>`. The IDP can also verify the identity of the Principal in the
 2224 absence of a signed request.

2225 **Threat:** Replay of an authentication assertion

2226 **Description:** After obtaining a valid assertion from an identity provider, either legitimately or surreptitiously, the
 2227 entity replays the assertion to the Service at a later time. A digital signature must cover the entire assertion, thus
 2228 elements within the assertion cannot be corrupted without detection during the mandatory verification step. However,
 2229 it is possible to fabricate an `<lib:AuthnResponse>` with the valid assertion.

2230 **Countermeasure:** The issuer should sign `<lib:AuthnResponse>` messages. Signing binds the
 2231 `<samlp:IssueInstant>` of the response message to the assertion it contains. This binding accords the rely-
 2232 ing party the opportunity to temporally judge the response. Additionally, a valid signature over the response
 2233 binds the `<samlp:InResponseTo>` element to the corresponding `<lib:AuthnRequest>`. (Specifying a short
 2234 period that the authentication assertion can be relied upon will minimize, but not mitigate this threat. Binding the
 2235 `<lib:AssertionId>` to the request `<samlp:InResponseTo>` element may also be handy.)

2236 **Threat:** Fabricated `<lib:AuthnResponse>` denial of service

2237 **Description:** An attacker captures the `<samlp:RequestID>` sent in an `<lib:AuthnRequest>` message by a service
 2238 provider to an identity provider, and sends several spurious `<lib:AuthnResponse>` messages to the service provider
 2239 with the same `<samlp:InResponseTo>`. Because the `<samlp:InResponseTo>` matches a `<samlp:RequestID>`
 2240 that the service provider had used, the service provider goes through the process of validating the signature in the
 2241 message. Thus, it is subject to a denial of service attack.

2242 **Countermeasure:** A secure communication channel should be established before transferring requests and responses.

2243 **Threat:** Collusion between two Principals

- 2244 **Description:** After getting an artifact or `<lib:AuthnResponse>` in step 6 (see Section 3.2.1), a legitimate Principal
2245 A could pass this artifact or `<lib:AuthnResponse>` on to another Principal, B. Principal B is now able to use the
2246 artifact or `<lib:AuthnResponse>`, while the actual authentication happened via Principal A.
- 2247 **Countermeasure:** Implementations where this threat is a concern MUST use the `<saml:AuthenticationLocality>`
2248 in the authentication statement. The IP address that Principal B uses would be different from the IP address within the
2249 `<saml:AuthenticationLocality>`. This countermeasure may not suffice when the user agent is behind a firewall
2250 or proxy server. IP spoofing may also circumvent this countermeasure.
- 2251 **Threat:** Stolen artifact and subsequent Principal impersonation
- 2252 **Description:** See Section 4.1.1.9.1 in [SAMLBindII]
- 2253 **Countermeasure:** Identity providers MUST enforce a policy of one-time retrieval of the assertion corresponding to
2254 an artifact so that a stolen artifact can be used only once. Implementations where this threat is a concern MUST use the
2255 `<saml:AuthenticationLocality>` in the authentication statement. The IP address of a spurious user agent that at-
2256 tempts to use the stolen artifact would be different from IP address within the `<saml:AuthenticationLocality>`.
2257 The service provider may then be able to detect that the IP addresses differ. This countermeasure may not suffice when
2258 the user agent is behind a firewall or proxy server. IP address spoofing may also circumvent this countermeasure.
- 2259 **Threat:** Stolen assertion and subsequent Principal impersonation
- 2260 **Description:** See Section 4.1.1.9.1 in [SAMLBindII]
- 2261 **Countermeasure:** Refer to the previous threat for requirements.
- 2262 **Threat:** Rogue service provider uses artifact or assertion to impersonate Principal at a different service provider
- 2263 **Description:** Because the `<lib:AuthnResponse>` contains the `<lib:ProviderID>`, this threat is not possible.
- 2264 **Countermeasure:** None
- 2265 **Threat:** Rogue identity provider impersonates Principal at a service provider
- 2266 **Description:** Because the Principal trusts the identity provider, it is assumed that the identity provider does not misuse
2267 the Principal's trust.
- 2268 **Countermeasure:** None
- 2269 **Threat:** Identity provider modifies Principal during a session with a service provider
- 2270 **Description:** A service provider whose session has exceeded the `<ReauthenticateOnOrAfter>` time must contact
2271 the Identity provider to get a new assertion. The new assertion might be for a different identity.
- 2272 **Countermeasure:** Service providers should continue to follow assertion processing rules to ensure that the subject of
2273 any assertions received is actually the user for which the assertion is needed.
- 2274 **Threat:** Rogue user attempts to impersonate currently logged-in legitimate Principal and thereby gain access to
2275 protected resources.
- 2276 **Description:** Once a Principal is successfully logged into an identity provider, subsequent `<AuthnRequest>`
2277 messages from different service providers concerning that Principal will not necessarily cause the Principal to be
2278 reauthenticated. Principals must, however, be authenticated unless the identity provider can determine that an
2279 `<AuthnRequest>` is associated not only with the Principal's identity, but also with a validly authenticated identity
2280 provider session for that Principal.
- 2281 **Countermeasure:** In implementations where this threat is a concern, identity providers MUST maintain state
2282 information concerning active sessions, and MUST validate the correspondence between an `<AuthnRequest>` and

2283 an active session before issuing an `<AuthnResponse>` without first authenticating the Principal. Cookies posted by
 2284 identity providers MAY be used to support this validation process, though Liberty does not mandate a cookie-based
 2285 approach.

2286 4.4.2.2. Liberty-Enabled Client and Proxy Profile

2287 **Threat:** Intercepted `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>` and `<lib:AuthnResponse>` and subsequent Principal im-
 2288 personation.

2289 **Description:** A spurious system entity can interject itself as a man-in-the-middle (MITM) between the user agent
 2290 (LECP) and a legitimate service provider, where it acts in the service provider role in interactions with the
 2291 LECP, and in the user agent role in interactions with the legitimate service provider. In this way, as a first step,
 2292 the MITM is able to intercept the service provider's `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>` (step 3 of Section 3.2.4)
 2293 and substitute any URL of its choosing for the `<lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>` value before forward-
 2294 ing the `<lib:AuthnRequestEnvelope>` on to the LECP. Typically, the MITM will insert a URL value that
 2295 points back to itself. Then, if the LECP subsequently receives a `<lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope>` from the
 2296 identity provider (step 6 in Section 3.2.4) and subsequently sends the contained `<lib:AuthnResponse>` to the
 2297 `<lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>` received from the MITM, the MITM will be able to masquerade as the
 2298 Principal at the legitimate service provider.

2299 **Countermeasure:** The identity provider specifies to the LECP the address to which the LECP
 2300 must send the `<lib:AuthnResponse>`. The `<lib:AssertionConsumerServiceURL>` in the
 2301 `<lib:AuthnResponseEnvelope>` element is for this purpose. This URL value is among the metadata that
 2302 identity and service providers must exchange in the process of establishing their operational relationship (see
 2303 Section 3.1 and Section 3.1.3).

2304 4.4.2.3. Federation

2305 **Threat:** Collusion among service providers can violate privacy of the Principal

2306 **Description:** When a group of service providers collude to share the `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` of a
 2307 Principal, they can track and in general compromise the privacy of the principal. More generally, this threat exists for
 2308 any common data (e.g. phone number) shared by rogue system entities.

2309 **Countermeasure:** The `<lib:IDPProvidedNameIdentifier>` is required to be unique for each identity provider to
 2310 service provider relationship. However, this requirement does not eliminate the threat when there are rogue participants
 2311 under the Principal's identity federation. The only protection is for Principals to be cautious when they choose service
 2312 providers and understand their privacy policies.

2313 **Threat:** Poorly generated name identifiers may compromise privacy

2314 **Description:** The federation protocol mandates that the `<lib:NameIdentifier>` elements be unique within a
 2315 Principal's federated identities. The name identifiers exchanged are pseudonyms and, to maintain the privacy of
 2316 the Principal, should be resistant to guessing or derivation attacks.

2317 **Countermeasure:** Name identifiers should be constructed using pseudo-random values that have no discernable
 2318 correspondence with the Principal's identifier (or name) used by the entity that generates the name identifier.

2319 4.4.3. Name Registration

2320 No known threats.

2321 4.4.4. Federation Termination: HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

2322 **Threat:** Attacker can monitor and disrupt termination

2323 **Description:** During the initial steps, a passive attacker can collect the `<lib:FederationTerminationNotification>`
 2324 information when it is issued in the redirect. This threat is possible because the first and second steps are not required
 2325 to use https as the URL scheme. An active attacker may be able to intercept and modify the message conveyed in
 2326 step 2 because the digital signature only covers a portion of the message. This initial exchange also exposes the name
 2327 identifier. Exposing these data poses a privacy threat.

2328 **Countermeasure:** All exchanges should be conducted over a secure transport such as SSL or TLS.

2329 4.4.5. Single Logout: HTTP-Redirect-Based Profile

2330 **Threat:** Passive attacker can collect a Principal's name identifier

2331 **Description:** During the initial steps, a passive attacker can collect the `<lib:LogoutRequest>` information when it
 2332 is issued in the redirect. Exposing these data poses a privacy threat.

2333 **Countermeasure:** All exchanges should be conducted over a secure transport such as SSL or TLS.

2334 **Threat:** Unsigned `<lib:LogoutRequest>` message

2335 **Description:** An Unsigned `<lib:LogoutRequest>` could be injected by a spurious system entity thus denying
 2336 service to the Principal. Assuming that the NameIdentifier can be deduced or derived then it is conceivable that the
 2337 user agent could be directed to deliver a fabricated `<lib:LogoutRequest>` message.

2338 **Countermeasure:** Sign the `<lib:LogoutRequest>` message. The identity provider can also verify the identity of a
 2339 Principal in the absence of a signed request.

2340 4.4.6. Identity Provider Introduction

2341 No known threats.

References

Normative

- 2344 [HTML4] Raggett, D., Le Hors, A., Jacobs, I, eds. (24 December 1999). "HTML 4.01 Specification," Recommendation, W3C <http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/> [August 2003].
- 2346 [LibertyAuthnContext] Madsen, Paul, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.2-errata-v1.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2348 [LibertyGlossary] "Liberty Technical Glossary," Version 1.3-errata-v1.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 Aug 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Hodges, Jeff, eds.
- 2350 [LibertyMetadata] Davis, Peter, eds. "Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification," Version 1.0-errata-v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2352 [LibertyProtSchema] Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version 1.2-errata-v2.0, Liberty Alliance Project (12 September 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>
- 2354 [SAMLBind11] Maler, Eve, Mishra, Prateek, Philpott, Rob, eds. (27 May 2003). "Bindings and Profiles for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V1.1," OASIS Committee Specification, version 1.1, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/documents.php?wg_abbrev=security
- 2358 [SAMLCore11] Maler, Eve, Mishra, Prateek, Philpott, Rob, eds. (27 May 2003). "Assertions and Protocol for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V1.1," OASIS Committee Specification, version 1.1, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/documents.php?wg_abbrev=security
- 2362 [SAMLSec] McClaren, C., eds. (05 November 2002). "Security Considerations for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML)," Version 1.0, OASIS Standard, Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/security/#documents>
- 2365 [Schema1] Thompson, Henry S., Beech, David, Maloney, Murray, Mendelsohn, Noah, eds. (May 2002). "XML Schema Part 1: Structures," Recommendation, World Wide Web Consortium <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>
- 2368 [SOAPv1.1] "Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1," Box, Don, Ehnebuske, David, Kakivaya, Gopal, Layman, Andrew, Mendelsohn, Noah, Nielsen, Henrik Frystyk, Winer, Dave, eds. World Wide Web Consortium W3C Note (08 May 2000). <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>
- 2371 [SSL] Frier, A., Karlton, P., Kocher, P., eds. (November 1996). Netscape Communications Corporation "The SSL 3.0 Protocol," <http://www.netscape.com/eng/ssl3/>
- 2373 [RFC1750] Eastlake, D., Crocker, S., Schiller, J., eds. (December 1994). "Randomness Recommendations for Security," RFC 1750, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1750.txt> [August 2003].
- 2375 [RFC1945] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Frystyk, H., eds. (May 1996). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.0," RFC 1945, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1945.txt> [August 2003].
- 2377 [RFC2045] Freed, N., Borenstein, N., eds. (November 1996). "Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part One: Format of Internet Message Bodies," RFC 2045, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2045.txt> [November 1996].
- 2380 [RFC2965] Kristol, D., Montulli, L., eds. (October 2000). "HTTP State Management Mechanism," RFC 2965, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2965.txt> [October 2000].

-
- 2382 [RFC2119] Bradner, S., eds. "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels," RFC 2119, The Internet
2383 Engineering Task Force (March 1997). <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt> [March 1997].
- 2384 [RFC2246] Dierks, T., Allen, C., eds. (January 1999). "The TLS Protocol," Version 1.0 RFC 2246, Internet
2385 Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2246.txt> [January 1999].
- 2386 [RFC2396] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Masinter, L., eds. (August 1998). "Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI):
2387 Generic Syntax," RFC 2396, The Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt>
2388 [August 1998].
- 2389 [RFC2616] Fielding, R., Gettys, J., Mogul, J., Frystyk, H., Masinter, L., Leach, P., Berners-Lee, T., eds. (June
2390 1999). "Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1," RFC 2616, The Internet Engineering Task Force
2391 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt> [June 1999].
- 2392 [RFC2617] Franks, J., Hallam-Baker, P., Hostetler, J., Lawrence, S., Leach, P., Stewart, L., eds. (June 1999). "HTTP
2393 Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication," RFC 2617, The Internet Engineering Task Force
2394 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2617.txt> [June 1999].
- 2395 [RFC3106] Eastlake, D., Goldstein, T., eds. (April 2001). "ECML v1.1: Field Specifications for E-Commerce," RFC
2396 3106, Internet Engineering Task Force <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3106.txt> [April 2001].
- 2397 [WML] "Wireless Markup Language Version 1.3 Specification," Version 1.3, Open Mobile Alliance
2398 <http://www.openmobilealliance.org/tech/affiliates/wap/wapindex.html>
- 2399 [xmlenc-core] Eastlake, Donald, Reagle, Joseph, eds. (December 2002). "XML Encryption Syntax and Processing,"
2400 W3C Recommendation, World Wide Web Consortium <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlenc-core/>
- 2401 **Informative**
- 2402 [LibertyImplGuide] "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2, Liberty Alliance Project (18 April
2403 2004). <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs> Thompson, Peter, Champagne, Darryl, eds.
- 2404 [NetscapeCookie] eds. "Persistent Client State HTTP Cookies," Netscape http://wp.netscape.com/newsref/std/cookie_spec.html
2405

EXHIBIT 5



Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

November 12, 2003

Editor:

Christine Varney, Hogan & Hartson

Contributors:

Piper Cole, Sun Microsystems
William Duserick, Fidelity
Jill Lesser, AOL
Gary Podorowsky, Sony
Paule Sibieta, France Telecom
Charlotte Thornby, Sun Microsystems

Abstract:

Privacy and security are key concerns in the implementation of Liberty Alliance specifications. As such, the Liberty Alliance has and will continue to provide tools and guidance to implementing companies that enable them to build more secure, privacy-friendly identity-based services that can comply with local regulations and create a more trusted relationship with customers and partners. The following document highlights certain national privacy laws, fair information practices and implementation guidance for organizations using the Liberty Alliance specifications.

Contents

1. Executive Summary2

2. Introduction.....3

3. Liberty Alliance Perspective on Privacy.....4

4. Privacy laws.....5

5. Fair Information Principles6

6. Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations.....8

7. Security20

8. Internet Security Vulnerabilities and Precautions23

 8.1. Common Weaknesses.....24

 8.2. Browser Vulnerabilities.....25

 8.3. Protocol Vulnerabilities.....26

 8.4. Summary.....28

9. Terminology.....28

10. References.....30

1. Executive Summary

The Liberty Alliance Project is a consortium of more than 150 organizations worldwide working together to create open, technical specifications for federated network identity. These specifications, which are available for any organization to download and incorporate into products and services, provide:

- Simplified sign-on capabilities using a federated network identity architecture that supports all current and emerging network access devices.
- Permissions-based attribute sharing to enable organizations to provide users with choice and control over the use and disclosure of their personal information.
- A commonly accepted platform and mechanism for building and managing identity-based web services based on open industry standards.

Because companies will implement Liberty's specifications in connection with their web-based offerings, privacy and security are key concerns. As such, Liberty has and will continue to provide tools and guidance to implementing companies to lead them to build more secure, privacy-friendly identity-based services that can be in compliance with local regulations and create a more trusted relationship with customers and partners.

The Liberty specifications will enable companies to adhere to information practices that comply with national privacy laws and regulations, or in the absence of such laws, industry best practices. It is however, important to note that Liberty, as a standards body, will not manage companies' compliance with those laws.

The following document highlights certain national privacy laws, fair information practices and implementation guidance for organizations using the Liberty Alliance specifications. Below is a brief summary of key points made in the paper, but the Alliance would encourage all parties to read through the entire document.

Liberty's Perspective on Privacy:

- The Liberty Alliance considers privacy and security of a Principal's personal information to be extremely important. This philosophy has driven many decisions crucial in the specification development process.
- Because the Liberty specifications represent a novel approach to account linking and data exchange, we believe it is important to identify implementation best practices to accompany the specifications.
- The Alliance also recommends that companies implementing any identity-related services or applications consult with local counsel to ensure that the services they provide comply with applicable privacy laws and regulations.

Privacy Laws and Fair Information Practices:

- There are several privacy laws, in varying states of development, enacted worldwide. This document highlights some of the more pertinent regulations in the U.S., Canada, Europe and other regions.
- This paper also describes certain practices and frameworks created by various organizations that address the use and disclosure of personal information. Topics addressed include adoption and implementation of privacy policies, notice and disclosure, choice and consent, data quality, security safeguards and accountability.

Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations:

- In addition to current laws and organizational guidelines, the Liberty Alliance offers in this paper a baseline set of fair information practices for any entity using the Liberty specifications.
- Liberty-enabled providers can function in multiple roles within an identity management relationship. These roles come with certain responsibilities – whether their role is Principal, Service Provider, Identity

Provider, Attribute Provider or Discovery Service. This paper reviews these roles and responsibilities in the context of privacy and security.

Security, Internet Protocols and Browsers:

- In developing its specifications, Liberty has evaluated the weaknesses of several well-known and frequently used Internet protocols and browsers. The Liberty Alliance has made every effort to provide secure standards, but since the standards are built on top of insecure protocols, there are some unavoidable potential vulnerabilities. This should not be misconstrued to suggest that the Liberty Specifications are insecure, but that implementations are dependent on all the underlying protocols, and thus care must be taken in implementation. The Liberty specifications neither increase nor eliminate these vulnerabilities.
- To that end, this best practices document provides definitions and information about security vulnerabilities and offers mitigating information to avoid the most common of them.

2. Introduction

The Liberty Alliance Project (“**Liberty Alliance**” or “**Liberty**”) is an unincorporated, contract-based group of more than 150 companies and organizations from around the world. Liberty’s objective is to create open, technical specifications (“**Liberty Specifications**”) that (i) enable simplified sign-on through federated network identification on all current and emerging network access devices, and (ii) support and promote permissions-based attribute sharing to enable a user’s (“**Principal’s**”) choice and control over the use and disclosure of such Principal’s personal information. Liberty anticipates that these specifications will expedite the growth of e-commerce because they are designed to increase consumer convenience and confidence and to provide businesses with new business and cost-saving opportunities.

Liberty envisions that organizations will implement the Liberty Specifications in connection with their web-based offerings. Because privacy is important in these contexts, the Liberty Specifications include the necessary features and facilities to enable an implementing company to comply with its national privacy laws and regulations, or in the absence of law or regulation, best practices. Thus the Liberty Specifications will enable companies to adhere to information practices that comply with those laws and regulations.

The Liberty Alliance offers the guidance set forth in this document to implement the Liberty Specifications in an appropriately secure and privacy-friendly manner. Liberty also provides guidelines regarding privacy and security in a variety of documents, and intends to provide such guidance for future versions of the Liberty Specifications as well.¹

This document first presents Liberty’s perspective on privacy, followed by a discussion of certain general privacy laws and fair information practices. It then highlights certain “best practices” that will help those using the Liberty Specifications to ensure that privacy concerns are addressed. We offer some observations on security issues generally and Internet protocols and browsers more specifically. Finally, also attached for easy reference are links to books, papers, and other materials that discuss online security and privacy issues, as well as a broad sample of the variety of contemporary privacy paradigms that exist.

Companies that implement the Liberty Specifications are advised to consult with local counsel to ensure that the services they provide, based upon the Liberty Specifications, comply with applicable law. Please note that these best practices are intended to provide guidelines, not serve as an exhaustive resource. Furthermore, from a technical standpoint, these best practices are non-normative – they are not the rules defining the Liberty Specifications, but rather identify the privacy and security concerns that should be addressed when implementing Liberty Specifications. It is important to note that the Liberty Specifications are based upon existing Internet architecture and well-known protocols. The Liberty Specifications cannot and do not cure the well documented security challenges inherent in the

¹ Further guidelines on privacy and security can be found in the following Liberty specification documents: Liberty Alliance, “Liberty Security Bulletin October 11, 2002;” Thomas Wason, “Architectural Overview Version 1.0-2.0;” Paul Madsen, “Liberty Authentication Context Specification;” Gary Ellison, “ID-WSF Security Mechanisms;” Susan Landau, “ID-WSF Security and Privacy Overview;” John Kemp and Tom Wason, “ID-FF Bindings and Profiles;” Scott Cantor and John Kemp, “Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification;” and John Linn, “Liberty Trust Models.”

architecture of the Internet. Because companies from any part of the world, whether for-profit or not-for-profit, whether or not a member of the Liberty Alliance, may use the Liberty Specifications, the best practices identified in this document cannot and do not capture or address each potentially applicable legal privacy regime. Companies that implement the Liberty Specifications are advised to consult with local counsel to ensure that the services they provide, based upon the Liberty Specifications, comply with applicable privacy laws and regulations.

In addition, readers of this document should be aware that the Liberty Specifications are just that – specifications only. Given the global nature of e-commerce, the myriad of laws that apply to privacy, and the fact that the Liberty Alliance itself does not provide any services, the Liberty Alliance cannot and does not (i) advise as to what laws, regulations, or fair information practices are applicable to any given company, (ii) condition use of the Liberty Specifications on adoption of a particular set of fair information practices, (iii) monitor, audit or enforce compliance with applicable laws and regulations, nor (iv) have any liability with respect to an implementing company's use of the Liberty Specifications. The implementing companies remain responsible for monitoring implementation and, as is the case today, remain answerable to local enforcement authorities for non-compliance with applicable laws.

Similarly, implementing companies should monitor the ever-changing status of security challenges, and should take these into account when designing their implementations. To aid in this effort, we present in this document some of the well-known Internet and protocol security vulnerabilities that should be taken into account when implementing the Liberty Specifications.

3. Liberty Alliance Perspective on Privacy

The Liberty Alliance considers privacy and security of a Principal's personal information to be extremely important. Privacy, security and consumer considerations drive many decisions the Liberty Alliance made about the world of online commerce that the Liberty Specifications enable. In particular, the Liberty Alliance made the following fundamental decisions regarding the Liberty Specifications:

- To use a de-centralized architecture, where it is not necessary to have data stored with a single entity;
- To use a federated architecture, where parties are free to link networks as business judgment dictates;
- To support and promote permissions-based attribute sharing to enable consumer choice and control over the use and disclosure of his or her personal information;
- To provide open specifications that are not centrally administered;
- To provide interoperable specifications that can be used on a wide variety of network access devices;
- To leverage existing systems, standards, and protocols where they work well;
- To enable companies to transmit information using the specifications with the best available security;
- To include in the specifications, tools that enable companies to respond to consumer interests regarding privacy and security and to compete on that basis.

Our perspective on privacy is necessarily informed by two key characteristics of our work:

1. The Liberty Alliance is a group of individual companies writing open technical specifications and, except for the specifications, the Liberty Alliance does not provide products or services directly to the public; and
2. The Liberty Alliance is composed of individual member companies from around the globe and from myriad sectors of the economy. Many of the Liberty Alliance members serve consumers directly and others create the infrastructure products that are used by companies to serve consumers directly and by companies to run their internal operations. Some companies serve global markets, and others serve regional markets in Europe, Japan, Korea, and the United States.

Given the goals of facilitating e-commerce and providing a mechanism that permits compliance with local law and appropriate security, Liberty believes that the responsible approach is to create flexible, interoperable specifications that can be implemented around the globe in a variety of different ways to satisfy applicable privacy and security concerns and related laws. Thus, the Liberty Specifications provide tools that can be used by implementing companies to address privacy and security concerns. As noted earlier, the implementing companies are solely responsible for

deploying the Liberty Specifications in a secure manner that complies with applicable privacy laws and fair information practices.

Because the Liberty Specifications represent a novel approach to account linking and data exchange, we believe it is important to identify implementation best practices to accompany the specifications. The best practices below simply explain what fair information principles Liberty-enabled providers should address, depending upon which role(s) they perform. This document also explains the tools contained in the specifications that can be used to respond to such considerations, including elements of the Liberty Specifications that enable implementers to more effectively utilize various rights expression languages to communicate information about usage directives that may be associated with a given attribute.

Finally, it is important to note that the Liberty Specifications are built on a framework that presumes data exchange of personal attributes will occur in the context of permissioning. While, as noted, the Liberty Alliance has no role in providing services, many of the architectural decisions made in creating the Liberty Specifications were made on the presumption that those providing services based on the Liberty Specifications would be engaging in permissions-based attribute sharing.

These architectural considerations, as well as specific features of the Liberty Specifications reflect the fact that the Liberty Alliance is both very conscious of the importance of privacy, security and other public policy considerations, and cognizant of the fact that the Liberty Alliance is, fundamentally, an open specifications body that cannot – and should not – enforce particular implementations on parties using the Liberty Specifications.

4. Privacy laws

There are a variety of privacy protection laws throughout the world, each with its unique set of requirements and obligations. The following discussion highlights some, but by no means all, of these laws, and the differences between those highlighted.²

Some of the privacy laws that have been enacted include, among others:

- European Union Directive on Data Protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and the free movement of such data.³
- European Union Directive concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector.⁴
- In Canada – The Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act.⁵
- In the United States – The Children’s Online Privacy Protection Act, The Graham-Leach-Bliley Act, The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act, and more generally, the Federal Trade Commission has challenged online privacy policies under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.⁶
- In Other Territories – According to Privacy International’s Privacy and Human Rights: An International Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments, 2003, there are several other territories that have enacted or enforced some form of privacy laws.⁷

The EU Data Protection Directive (95/46/EC) aims to protect the privacy of EU citizens and harmonize differing laws and regulations in the Member States. The EU Data Protection Directive covers any information relating to an

² The summaries of law provided below are for informational purposes only, and are not intended to be legal advice.

³ EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC.

⁴ EU Directive on Privacy and Electronic Communications 2002/58/EC.

⁵ Canadian Privacy Act. S.C. 2000.

⁶ See 15 U.S.C.A. § 6501 (2000); 15 U.S.C.A. § 6801 et. seq. (1999); 42 U.S.C.A. §§ 1320(d) et. seq. (1996); 15 U.S.C.A. § 45(a) (2000).

⁷ Privacy International, “Privacy and Human Rights: An International Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments, 2002.”

individual, even if collected purely in a business context, such as contact details of business clients, and not just consumers. Data about a company's employees is also covered.

The Directive imposes duties on data "controllers," those who determine the purpose and means of processing data. In addition to imposing registration requirements with data commissioners in Member States, the Directive requires that data be (i) processed fairly, (ii) collected for specified, explicit and legitimate purposes and not used in ways incompatible with those purposes, (iii) collected only to the extent that it is adequate and relevant, and not excessive in relation to the purposes for which it was collected, (iv) accurate and kept up to date, (v) kept no longer than necessary for the purposes for which it was collected, and (vi) not transferred to third-party countries that do not ensure an adequate level of protection for the data. Data may generally be processed either by unambiguous consent or where necessary to perform a contract. However, certain data is considered sensitive requiring explicit consent before processing. In addition, data subjects are to be given notice of the data controller, purposes of processing their data, recipients of the data, and the right to access and correct the data. This notice to the data subject is to be provided even when the data has been obtained not from the data subject but from a third party.

The EU Data Protection Directive for electronic communications (2002/58/EC) complements the aforementioned Directive for the electronic communications sector. It includes inter alia specific provisions regarding the confidentiality of communications, the handling of traffic and location data and the requirements and restrictions applying to the use of cookies as well as to unsolicited electronic communications. Member States are required to implement the Directive by 31 October 2003.

The Canadian Privacy Act sets out ground rules for how private sector organizations may collect, use or disclose personal information in the course of commercial activities. The Act is centered around ten (10) underlying principles regarding (i) accountability, (ii) identifying purpose, (iii) consent, (iv) limiting collection, (v) limiting use, disclosure, and retention, (vi) accuracy, (vii) safeguards, (viii) openness, (ix) individual access, and (x) challenging compliance.

United States laws, on the other hand, take a more vertical approach with express federal privacy related statutes for specific sectors. For example, the Graham-Leach Bliley-Act ("**GLB Act**") governs the use of personal information that is given to and managed by financial service providers. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act ("**HIPAA**") mandates standards for the use of protected health care data. The Children's Online Privacy Protection Act ("**COPPA**") governs the use and collection of personal information about children under age 13. Each of these laws requires some form of notice and consent before disclosure of the personal information at issue, and requires that a party use reasonable safeguards to maintain the confidentiality of such personal information. Under the GLB Act, for example, consent to share personal information with unaffiliated third parties for marketing purposes via an "opt-out" procedure rather than express or an "opt-in" consent, may be acceptable. In other cases, the Federal Trade Commission has exercised its authority under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act to challenge certain privacy practices as "unfair and deceptive."⁸

Given the breadth and variety of privacy laws that may be applicable depending upon the jurisdiction in which a company does business, the Liberty Alliance strongly recommends that any entity implementing the Liberty Specifications consult with local counsel to determine which laws are applicable to the company's business and how best to comply with those laws.

5. Fair Information Principles

General. In addition to existing privacy laws, several organizations have set forth fair information practices governing the use and disclosure of personal information. These organizations include, among others, the Online Privacy Alliance ("**OPA**"), the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development ("**OECD**"), the Center for Democracy and Technology ("**CDT**"), the Network Advertising Initiative ("**NAI**"), Health Internet Ethics ("**Hi-Ethics**"), and the Global Business Dialogue on Electronic Commerce ("**GBDe**").⁹

⁸ For an overview of U.S. federal and state privacy laws, see BBB Online, Inc. and the Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc., "A Review of Federal and State Privacy Laws."

⁹ Links to several of these fair information practices or privacy guidelines are noted in the References section of this document.

There are no universal standards among these organizations as to what fair information practices entail. The differences seen in these fair information practices are partially attributable to geography, and partially attributable to the sector to which the fair information practices apply.

OPA Guidelines. OPA is a U.S.-based organization which provides a general framework in which any U.S. company can operate, calling for customization and enhancement as appropriate to a company's business or industry sector. These guidelines generally provide as follows:

- **Adoption and Implementation of a Privacy Policy** – An organization should adopt and implement a policy for protecting the privacy of individually identifiable information.
- **Notice and Disclosure** – The privacy policy should be clear, easy to find, and available at or prior to the time individually identifiable information is collected. It should state “what information is being collected; the use of that information; possible third-party distribution of that information; the choices available to an individual regarding collection, use and distribution of the collected information; a statement of the organization's commitment to data security; and what steps the organization takes to ensure data quality and access. It should also disclose the consequences, if any, of an individual's refusal to provide information. The policy should also include a clear statement of what accountability mechanism the organization uses, including how to contact the organization.”
- **Choice/Consent** – Individuals must be given the opportunity to exercise choice regarding how individually identifiable information collected from them online may be used when such use is unrelated to the purpose for which the information was collected or where there is third-party distribution of such data unrelated to the purpose for which it is collected. At a minimum, individuals should be given the opportunity to opt out of such use or third-party distribution.
- **Data Security** – Organizations creating, maintaining, using or disseminating individually identifiable information should take appropriate measures to assure its reliability and should take reasonable precautions to protect it from loss, misuse or alteration. Organizations should take reasonable steps to assure that third parties to which they transfer such information are aware of these security practices, and that the third parties also take reasonable precautions to protect any transferred information.
- **Data Quality and Access** – Organizations creating, maintaining, using or disseminating individually identifiable information should take reasonable steps to assure that the data are accurate, complete and timely for the purposes for which they are to be used. Organizations should establish appropriate processes or mechanisms so that inaccuracies in material individually identifiable information, such as account or contact information, may be corrected. These processes and mechanisms should be simple and easy to use, and provide assurance that inaccuracies have been corrected. Other procedures to assure data quality may include use of reliable sources and collection methods, reasonable and appropriate consumer access and correction, and protections against accidental or unauthorized alteration.

OECD Guidelines. The OECD is an international organization focusing on global economic cooperation and development. OECD guidelines on the protection of privacy and trans-border flows of personal data are close to the European approach to privacy. Unlike the United States, Europe has more comprehensive privacy statutes and vests significant authority in its regulatory bodies to enforce privacy legislation. OECD's guidelines set forth the following eight principles:

- **Collection Limitation** – There should be limits to the collection of personal data and any such data should be obtained by lawful and fair means and, where appropriate, with the knowledge or consent of the data subject.
- **Data Quality** – Personal data should be relevant to the purposes for which they are to be used, and, to the extent necessary for those purposes, should be accurate, complete and kept up-to-date.
- **Purpose Specification** – The purposes for which personal data are collected should be specified not later than at the time of data collection and the subsequent use limited to the fulfillment of those purposes or such others as are not incompatible with those purposes and as are specified on each occasion of change of purpose.
- **Use Limitation** – Personal data should not be disclosed, made available or otherwise used for purposes other than those specified in accordance with Article 9 (the purpose specification principle) except: (a) with the consent of the data subject; or (b) by the authority of law.

- **Security Safeguards** – Personal data should be protected by reasonable security safeguards against such risks as loss or unauthorized access, destruction, use, modification or disclosure of data.
- **Openness** – There should be a general policy of openness about developments, practices and policies with respect to personal data. Means should be readily available of establishing the existence and nature of personal data, and the main purposes of their use, as well as the identity and usual residence of the data controller.
- **Individual Participation** – An individual should have the right: (a) to obtain from a data controller, or otherwise, confirmation of whether or not the data controller has data relating to him; (b) to have communicated to him, data relating to him within a reasonable time; at a charge, if any, that is not excessive; in a reasonable manner; and in a form that is readily intelligible to him; (c) to be given reasons if a request made under subparagraphs (a) and (b) is denied, and to be able to challenge such denial; and (d) to challenge data relating to him and, if the challenge is successful, to have the data erased, rectified, completed or amended.
- **Accountability** – A data controller should be accountable for complying with measures which give effect to the principles stated above.

6. Liberty Alliance Privacy Recommendations

As evident from the preceding sections, there is a wide range of fair information practices that have been promoted around the world. In an effort to promote “best practices,” Liberty recommends that an implementing company comply with all relevant laws. In the absence of laws, an implementing company should follow the most appropriate fair information practices applicable to the jurisdiction and industry sector in which the company intends to do business or offer products or services. Where applicable, an entity should not request or provide more information than is necessary for the interaction.

In addition, the Liberty Alliance offers the following baseline set of fair information practices as guidelines that companies, whether in the role of Service Provider, Identity Provider, Attribute Provider, Discovery Service or otherwise, should consider adopting when implementing Liberty Specifications. These recommended fair information practices are based on principles of notice, choice and control, access, security, quality, relevance, timeliness and accountability. Each of these practices, and its appropriateness in the context of Liberty Services, is briefly described below.

- **Notice.** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide to the Principal clear notice of who is collecting the information, what information they collect, how they collect it (e.g., directly or through non-obvious means, such as cookies), how they provide choice, access, security, quality, relevance and timeliness to Principals, whether they disclose the information collected to other entities, and whether other entities are collecting information through them. Providing notice is particularly important for Service Providers who may seek additional information beyond what is provided through other Liberty-Enabled Providers.
- **Choice.** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should offer Principals choices, to the extent appropriate given the circumstances, regarding what personally identifiable information is collected and how the personally identifiable information is used beyond the use for which the information was provided. In addition, consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers should allow Principals to review, verify, or update consents previously given or denied. The Liberty Specifications provide for both access permissions to allow a Principal to specify whether and under what circumstances a Service Provider can obtain given attributes, as well as an “envelope” for the discovery of or negotiation of usage directives as part of profile sharing. Both aspects of the privacy capabilities established by the Liberty Specifications should be fully implemented in a responsible manner and be easy for the Principal to configure. In particular, Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide for “usage directives” for data through either contractual arrangements, or through the use of Rights Expression Languages, as well as implementing the access authorization elements contained in the Liberty Specifications that permit the Principal to make certain choices regarding collection and use of personally identifiable information.
- **Principal Access to Personally Identifiable Information (PII).** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers that maintain PII should offer, consistent with and as required by relevant law, a Principal reasonable access to view the non-proprietary PII that it collects from the Principal or maintains about the

LIBERTY ALLIANCE PROJECT
Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

Principal. Access should not be construed to require access to proprietary data, public record data, or aggregate data.

- **Quality.** Consumer facing Liberty-Enabled Providers that collect and maintain personally identifiable information should permit Principals a reasonable opportunity to provide corrections to the personally identifiable information that is stored by such entities.
- **Relevance.** Liberty-Enabled Providers should use PII for the purpose for which it was collected, or the purposes about which the Principal has consented.
- **Timeliness.** Liberty-Enabled Providers should retain PII only so long as is necessary or requested and consistent with a retention policy accepted by the Principal.
- **Complaint Resolution.** Liberty-Enabled Providers should offer a complaint resolution mechanism for Principals who believe their PII has been mishandled.
- **Security.** Liberty-Enabled Providers should take reasonable steps to protect and provide an adequate level of security for PII.

Implementing companies should be aware that the Liberty Specifications provide tools the implementing company can use to help it comply with fair information practices, regardless of which protocol is adopted. These tools are discussed in more detail below. However, implementing companies should also be aware that any of these fair information practices (as well as any recommendations set forth in this document) are only guidelines, and may or may not satisfy or be consistent with the privacy laws, rules, and regulations applicable to the implementing company. Therefore, Liberty strongly recommends that any implementing company consult with local counsel to determine which laws are applicable to the company's business and how best to comply with those laws.

In order to address various privacy concerns and implement fair information practices using the Liberty Specifications, it is important for an implementing company to understand how certain schemas and protocols in the specifications operate and be aware of certain tools contained in the specifications that can be used to respond to such considerations.

Consumer choice and permission are central to Liberty's vision. The framework of the Liberty Specifications is built upon the presumption that PII will be shared ("attribute sharing") in the context of permissioning, i.e., upon the consent of the Principal and in accordance with the usages expressed by the Principal. Such attribute sharing should be predicated upon not only a prior agreement between the Liberty-Enabled Providers, but also upon providing notice to the Principal and obtaining the Principal's consent. The Liberty Specifications allow for recording both the notice and consent in an auditable fashion. Liberty recognizes that depending upon the particular implementation, for example in financial services transactions, it may be important to both the Principal and the Liberty-Enabled Provider to have increased certainty regarding their transaction. Such certainty may be achieved through the use of auditable records of notice and consent. In addition, Liberty-enabled providers should take reasonable measures to prevent unauthorized acquisition of a principal's personal information (e.g. by harvesting).

Within this framework, the Liberty Specifications identify various roles that comprise the federated identity infrastructure. Each of these roles has certain responsibilities in relation to protecting the privacy and security of a Principal's personally identifiable information. Liberty-Enabled Providers may function in multiple provider roles. These roles and their respective responsibilities include, among others:

- **Principal** – A Principal is an entity that can acquire a federated identity that is capable of making decisions and can be authenticated and vouched for by an Identity Provider. In a business-to-consumer (B2C) context, the Principal is the consumer. In other contexts, the Principal could be an individual, a corporation, or another legal entity. The fair information best practices set forth in this document are aimed to protect the confidentiality of the Principal's personally identifiable information. Principals should be vigilant when they provide their credentials (e.g., passwords, secure tokens, etc., entered over secure channels) or attributes over the web to protect themselves from being spoofed or otherwise providing such information to an unintended party. In addition, Principals should use care when establishing or modifying credentials. Also, Principals should become familiar with an entity's posted data practices before providing personally identifiable data to such entity.
- **Service Provider** – A Service Provider is an entity that provides services to Principals. Liberty envisions that the Service Provider will, upon request from a Principal, request that the Identity Provider (which may be itself or another party) authenticate the Principal. After the Principal has been authenticated, the Service Provider may request that certain attributes regarding the Principal be

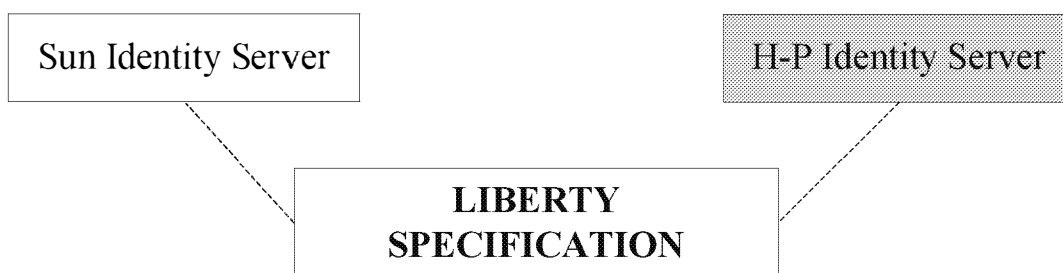
provided to it in order to provide the requested services to the Principal. Service Providers should inform Principals of their data practices, provide the Principal with certain choices regarding secondary uses of the Principal's personally identifiable information, maintain the security of a Principal's personally identifiable information within their control, and not use or share such information except in accordance with the Service Provider's privacy policy and/or the consent or usage directives of the Principal. The Service Provider should at all times ensure that its data practices conform with applicable local law and practice.

- **Identity Provider** – An Identity Provider is an entity that creates, maintains, and manages identity information for Principals. It authenticates and vouches for the Principal to other Service Providers within an Authentication Domain. The Identity Provider should also safeguard the Principal's identity credentials, and have some mechanisms in place to require the Authentication Domain to use the credentials in a proper manner.
- **Attribute Provider** – An Attribute Provider is an entity that provides attributes to a requester (i.e., a Service Provider) in accordance with its own policies and a Principal's permissions. Attribute Providers store and negotiate access control information defining the circumstances under which a Service Provider will be granted access to a given attribute(s). Attribute Providers store and negotiate usage directives that specify the manner in which attributes can be used, stored, and disclosed. An Attribute Provider has at least the same responsibilities as Service Providers with respect to clear notice (including notice to the Principal regarding what are the default usage directives and how the Principal can change such usage directives), choice, security, and responsible use and sharing of a Principal's data.
- **Discovery Service** – A Discovery Service is an entity (usually an Identity Provider) that has the ability to direct attribute requesters to the relevant Attribute Provider who provides the requested classes of attributes for the specified Principal. The Discovery Service should register only those Attribute Providers in accordance with the consent or usage directives of the Principal. The Discovery Service should permit the Principal to see which Attribute Providers have been registered on the Principal's behalf. An attribute requester can locate the Attribute Providers for a given Principal, even though the attribute requester and Attribute Providers do not have a common name for the Principal.

The following are two hypothetical examples of implementation of the Liberty Specifications by various companies. In Example 1, we start with the actual equipment manufacturers who could build Internet infrastructure software utilizing the specifications. Example 1 goes through the steps to an end user experience. Example 2 is a one page summary illustration of the process undertaken and explained in Example 1. Where Example 1 starts with software manufacturer, Example 2 shows the same process, in summary form, starting with the user.

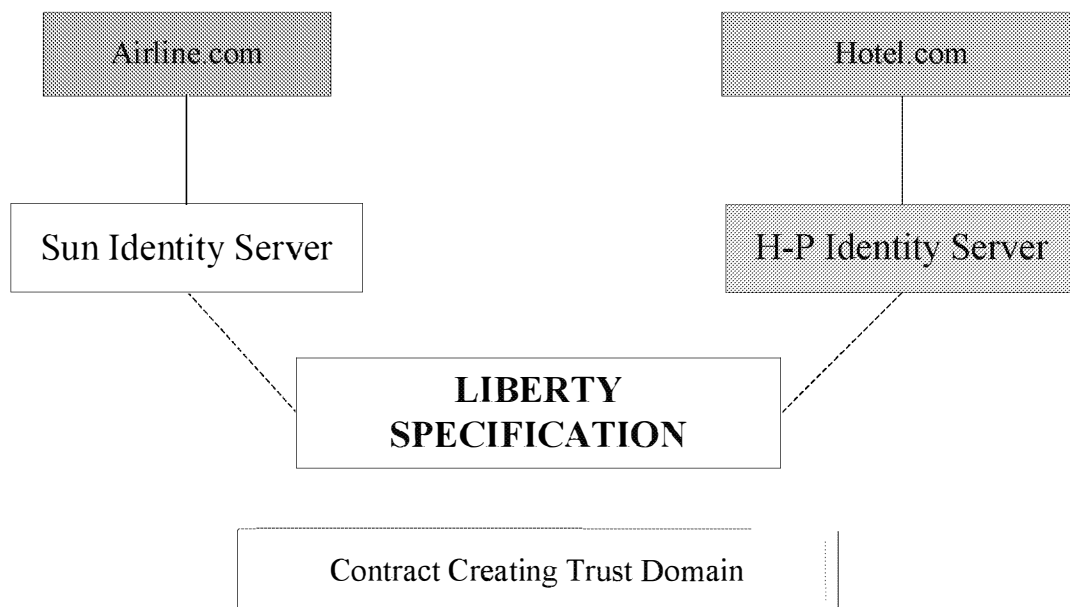
Hypothetical Example 1*1. Technology Implementation*

- a. Sun develops an identity server (infrastructure software) using the Project Liberty Alliance specifications (Liberty Specification) in order to allow the Sun identity server to interoperate with other technology products that implement the Liberty Specification.
- b. H-P develops an identity server (infrastructure software) using the Liberty Specification in order to allow the H-P identity server to interoperate with other technology products that implement the Liberty Specification.



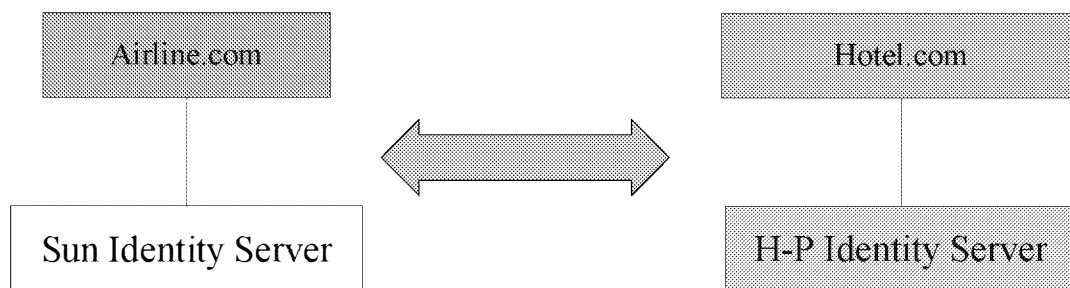
2. *Services Deployment*

- a. Airline employs a Sun Identity Server to authenticate users to its website, maintain frequent flyer information, and provide linkage to its reservation system.
- b. Hotel uses an HP Identity Server to authenticate users to its website and facilitate online reservations.

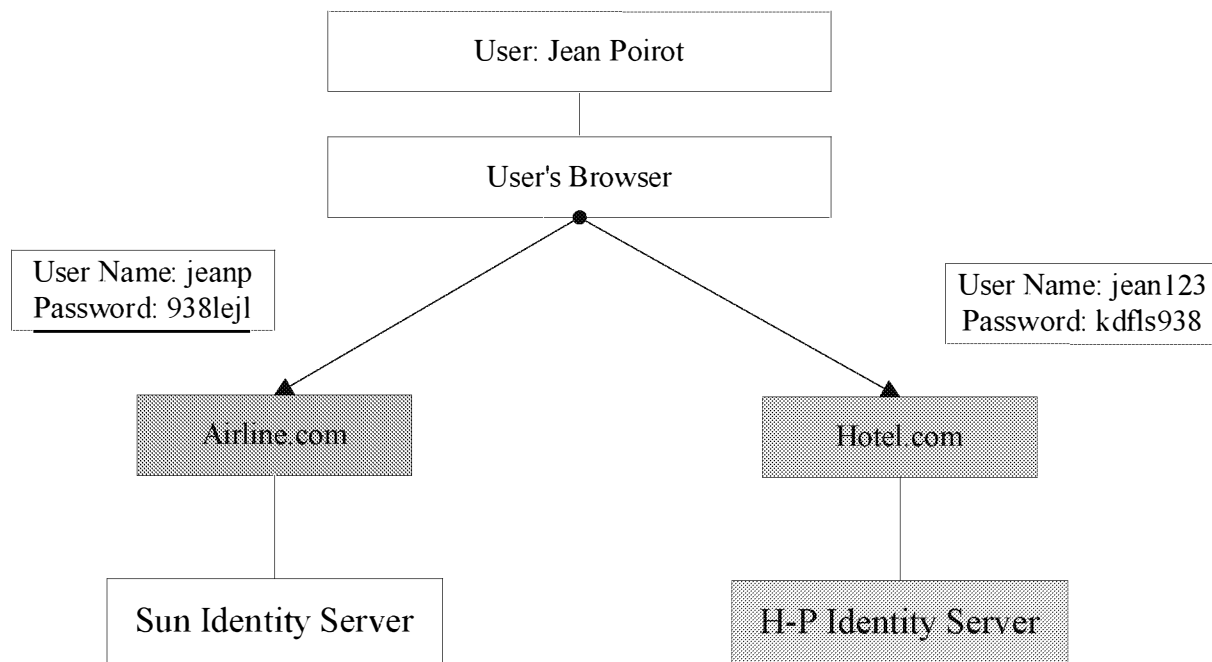


3. *Trust Domain*

- a. Airline and Hotel enter into a contract, which requires, among other things, that Hotel will accept Airline's authentication of a customer that is a customer of both Airline and Hotel (Airline is an Identity Provider and Hotel is a Service Provider.)

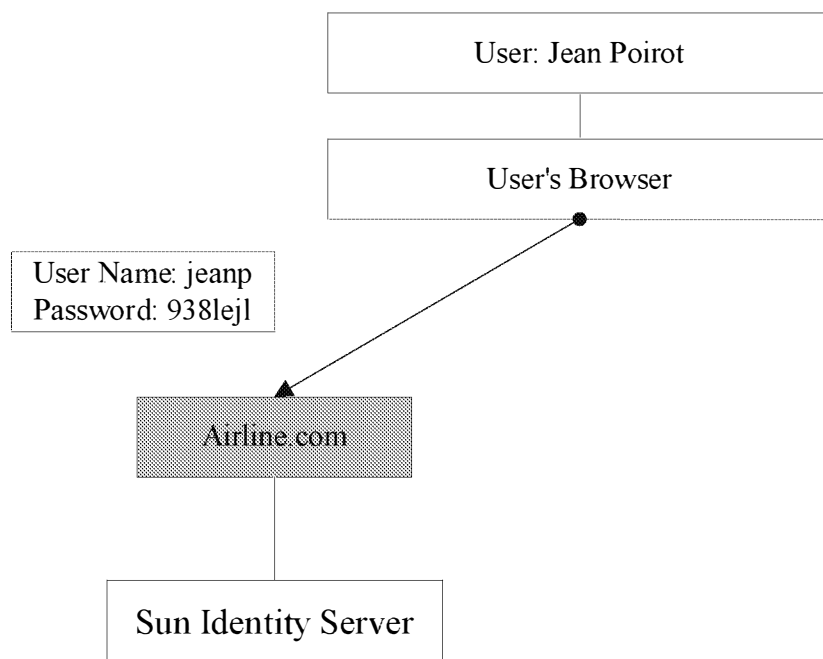
4. *Account Establishment*

- a. User establishes an account with Airline.com with User ID JeanP and a password.
- b. User establishes an account at Hotel.com with user name JeanI23 and a password.

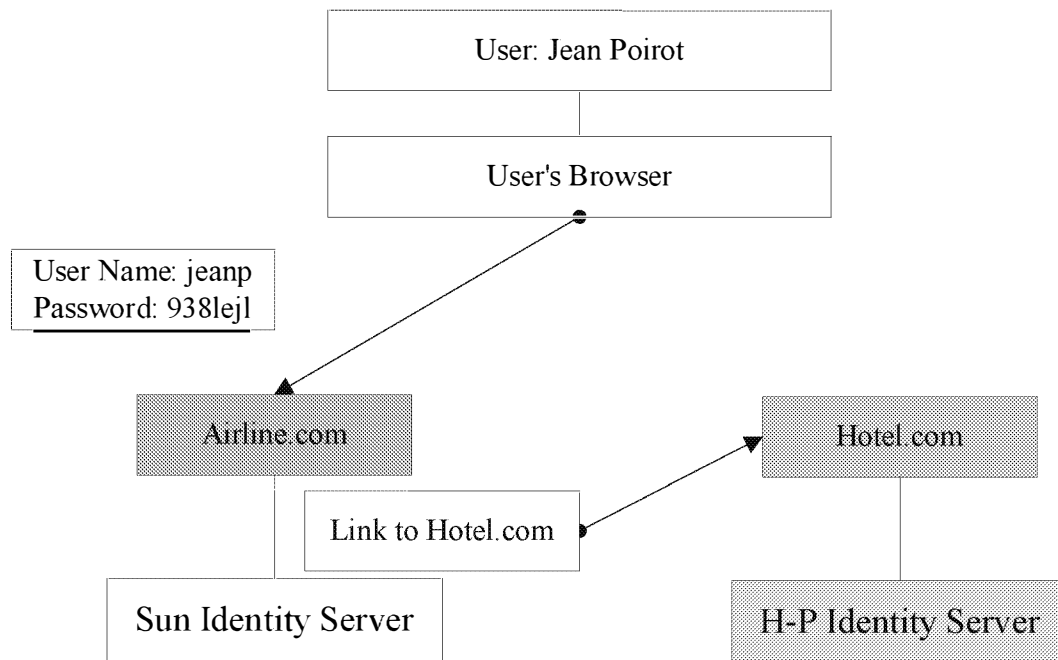


5. *Linking Accounts*

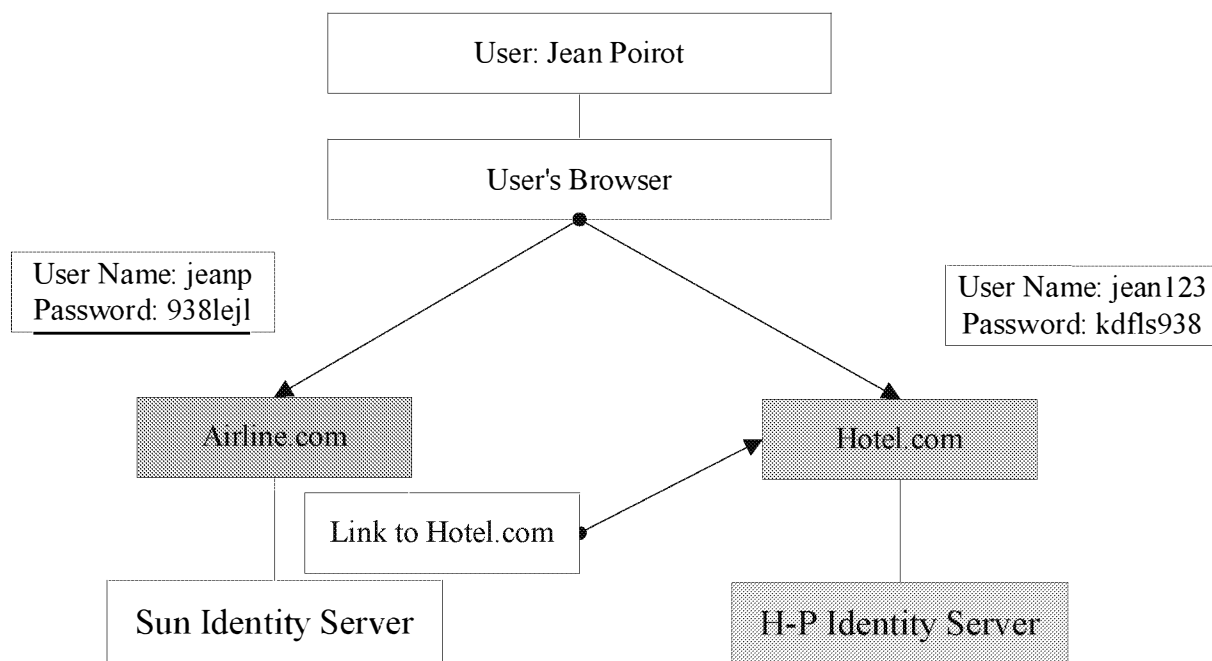
- a. Jean logs onto the Airline site with user name and password



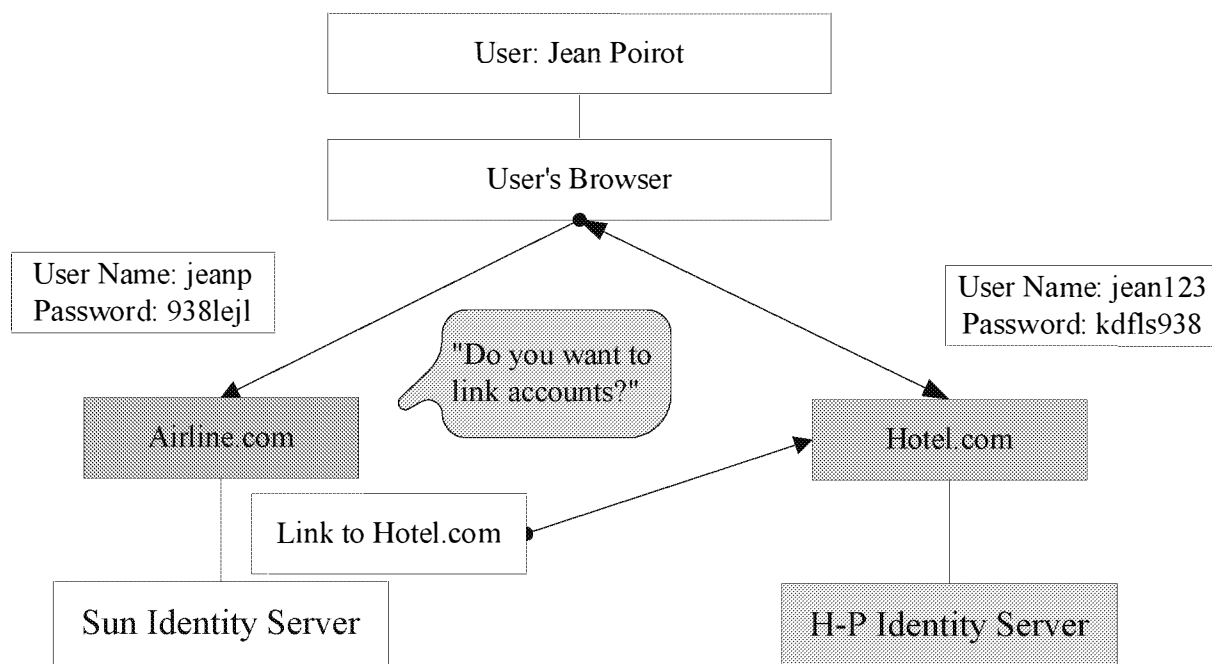
- b. Airline has a link that JeanP can use to go to the Hotel website.



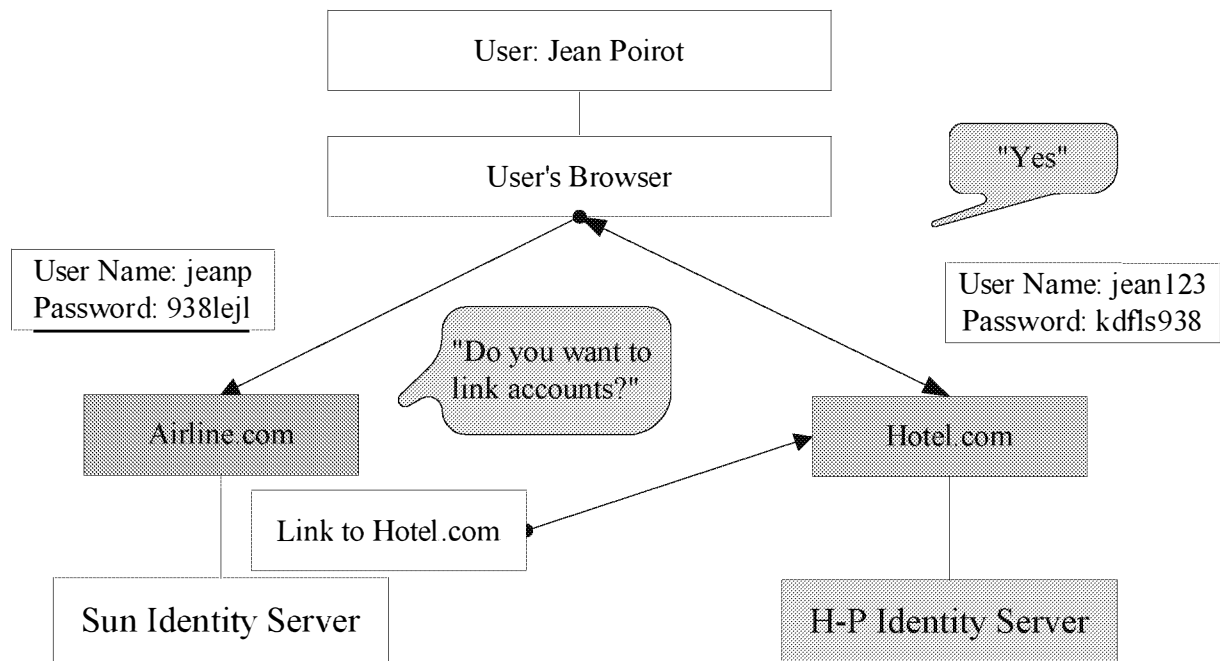
- c. JeanP clicks on that link and goes to the Hotel website and logs in with username Jeanl23 and password.



- d. Hotel would know that Jeanl23 came from the Airline site and asks if Jeanl23 would like to link his account at Airline with his account at Hotel, enabling single sign-on between the two accounts.



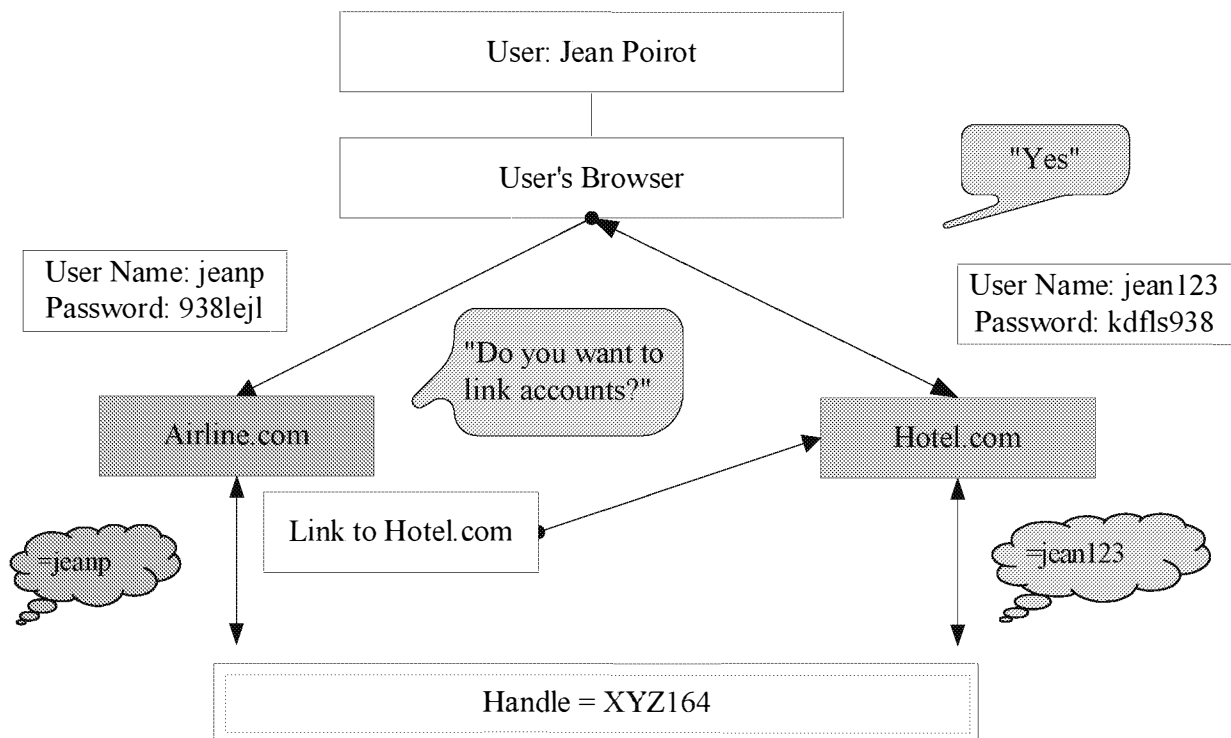
439 e. Jean123 indicates his consent by clicking "yes".



440

441

442 f. Airline and Hotel agree on a random set of characters (handle) by which each will recognize user as
 443 their customer (e.g., Airline: XYZ164 = authenticated JeanP; Hotel: XYZ164 = authenticated Jean123)



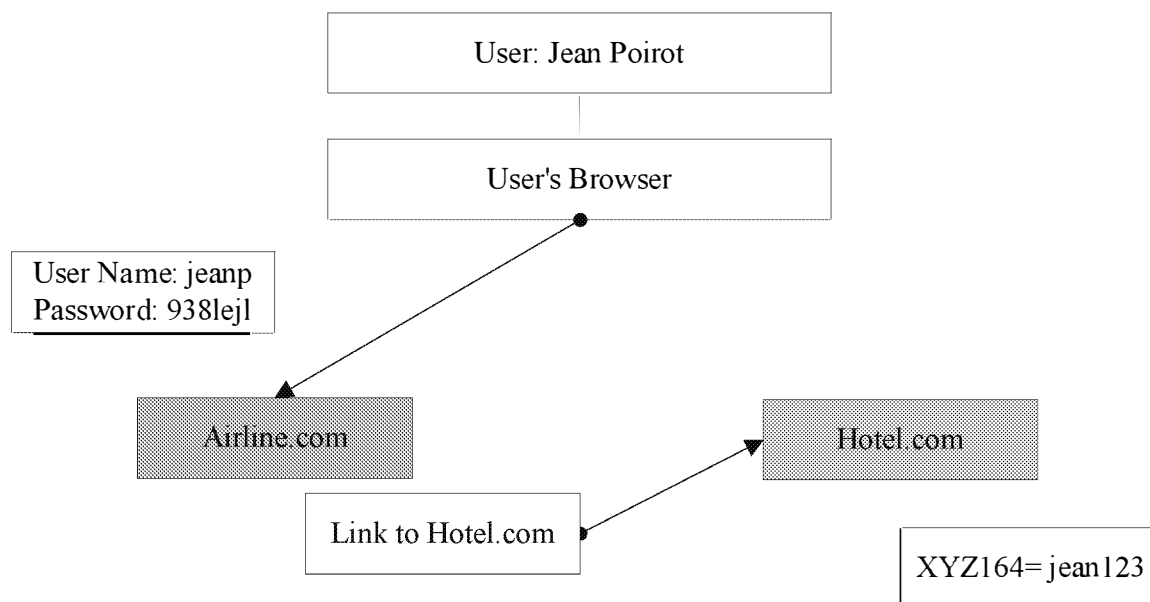
444

445

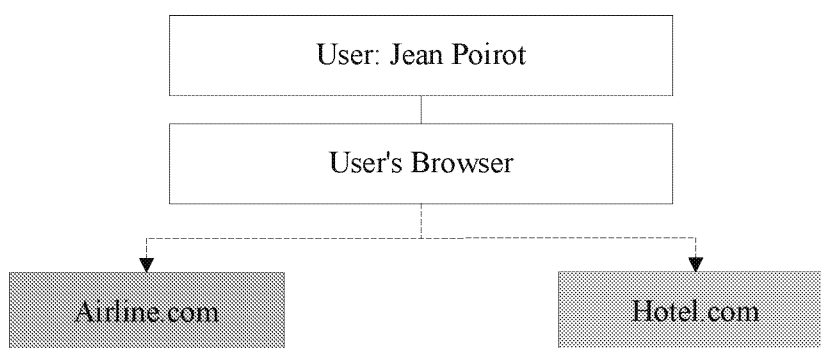
446

6. *Simplified sign-on (SSO)*

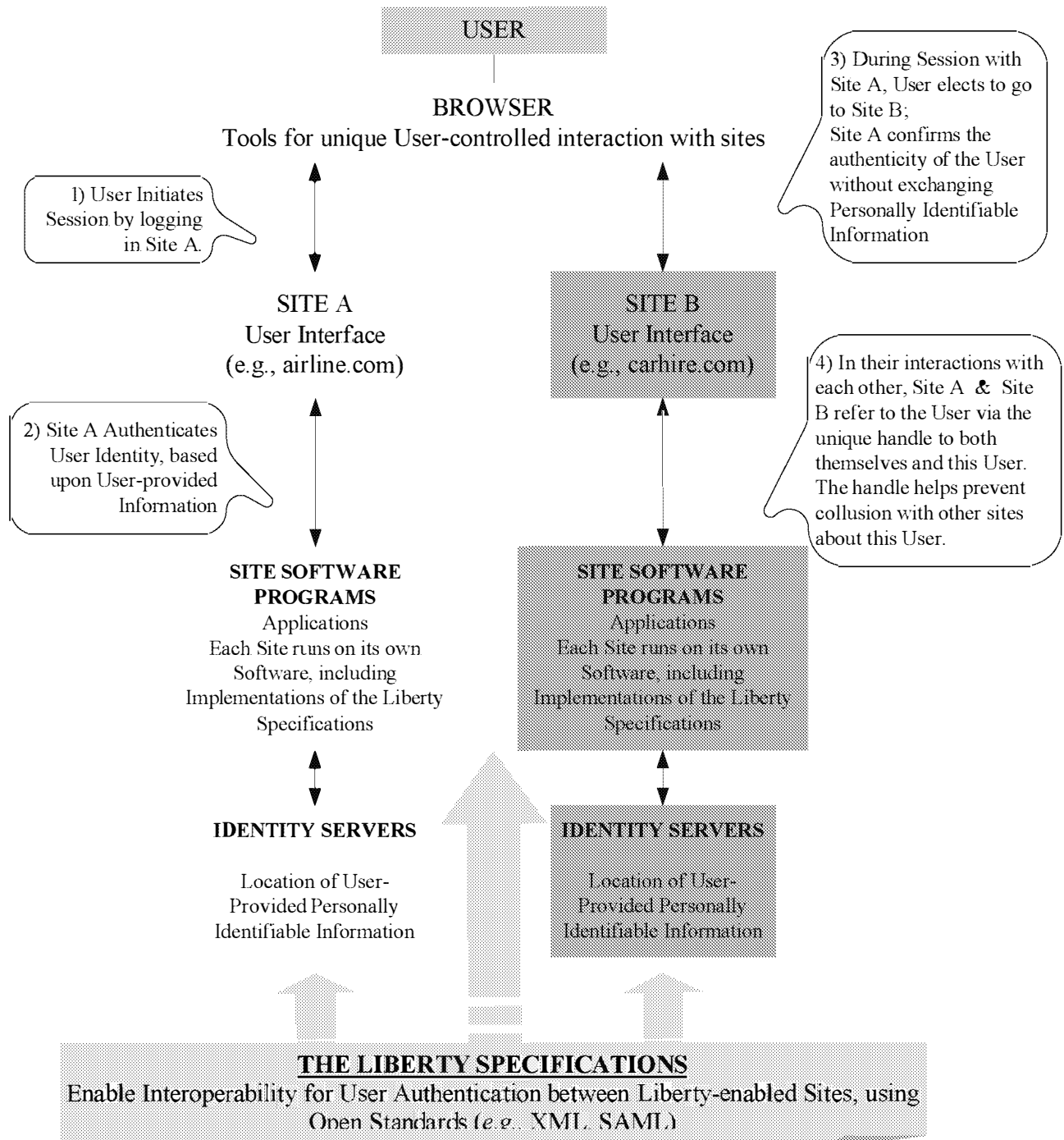
- a. User goes to Airline and logs in as JeanP and password.
- b. User clicks on link to Hotel website.
- c. Airline sends opaque handle to Hotel site with username.
- d. Hotel receives opaque handle and recognizes user as authenticated Jean123.



- e. When Jean logs out of either site, he is automatically logged out of both sites.



457 The following diagram is a summary hypothetical example of deployment by various companies:



458
459

460

461 In either example, if starting at an Identity Provider, the Principal makes an initial authentication by presenting a user
 462 name (real or pseudonymous) and a corresponding password. Next, the Principal establishes a local account with
 463 various Service Providers. The final step is for the Principal to link accounts. Account linking will likely be a two-step
 464 process. First the Principal consents to account linking and then provides specific consent for each Service Provider.
 465 After these steps, the Principal will be able to benefit from SSO and surf the Internet in a Trust Domain using the same
 466 name and password given initially to the Identity Provider.

Alternatively, a Principal may wish to connect to a Service Provider without first going to an Identity Provider. In this case the Service Provider will typically provide the Principal with a list of all Identity Providers with whom the Service Provider has formed a Trust Domain, and the Principal will be offered the opportunity to click on its preferred Identity Provider in order to authenticate. The Service Provider will redirect the Principal's browser to the chosen Identity Provider who will recognize the Principal by name and password (which the Principal will have to disclose). The Principal is then authenticated for all Providers within that Trust Domain for this session of Internet use.

At the end of the session, the Principal will benefit from an automatic Single-Log-Out performed by the system, i.e., by logging out of any site, the Principal can be automatically logged out of all of the other sites visited during that particular session of Internet use.

Of course, it is also possible for a Principal to visit a single Service Provider and log into that Service Provider using its user name and password recognized by that Service Provider, but it will not be able to take advantage of SSO until it authenticates at an Identity Provider.

In the preceding illustration, Jean now has a federated identity between Airline and Hotel. Assume that Jean has also federated his identity at Bank with his Airline and Hotel identities. Jean's identity at Airline includes Jean's name, address, and frequent flier information. Jean's account at Bank includes an electronic wallet where Jean stores his credit card information. Bank has previously notified Airline that it has credit card information related to Jean. Jean logs in at the Airline website, visits the Hotel website, and desires to make a reservation for a hotel room. In order to take a reservation, Hotel needs information regarding Jean's name, address, and credit card information. Hotel requests this information from Airline. After checking Jean's preferences regarding data, Airline provides the name and address information to Hotel, and directs Hotel to obtain credit card information from Bank. After checking Jean's preferences regarding data disclosure, Bank provides credit card information to Hotel. All of these interactions between Hotel, Airline, and Bank are done "behind the scenes." After Jean makes his request to make a reservation, his name, address, and credit card information are automatically included in the form presented to Jean at Hotel's website to make his reservation.

In this example, Airline acts not only as an Identity Provider (authenticating Jean's identity for Hotel), but also as an Attribute Provider (providing name and address information to Hotel) and as a Discovery Service (letting Hotel know that Jean's credit card information may be obtained from Bank). Bank is also an Attribute Provider because it provides credit card information to Hotel.

The roles of each of the Liberty-Enabled providers should be viewed within a privacy policy framework in which fair information practices are implemented. The framework should address both whether an attribute requester may obtain access to certain classes of a Principal's attributes, and if yes, what fine-grained methods are allowed, and what data is returned to the attribute requester.

In order to enable implementers to set up this framework, the Liberty Specifications include a number of tools designed to (i) increase a Principal's choice and control with respect to (a) the federation of his identity within an Authentication Domain and (b) use and disclosure of personally identifiable information, and (ii) facilitate certain interactions among Identity Providers, Service Providers, and Attribute Providers without disclosing a Principal's identity. These tools include:

- **Access Controls** – The Liberty Specifications enable Liberty Providers to make access control decisions on behalf of the Principal. Liberty-Enabled Providers should provide a mechanism by which the Principal can specify his or her authorization policy. Thus, for example, a Principal might not allow his or her home address to go to a newspaper website, but might allow it to be sent to an online store as part of a sales transaction.
- **Usage Directives** – The Liberty Specifications describe a container that may be used to list or point to usage directives regarding either the intended use of a requested attribute (from the requester), or the allowed usage of a requested attribute (from the attribute owner/holder). The Attribute Provider and the Service Provider may negotiate acceptable usage directives. The Attribute Provider can provide the Service Provider with a list of acceptable usage directives when the intended usage requested by the Service Provider doesn't match the Principal's usage directives.
- **Opaque Handles** – The Liberty Specifications support opaque handles, the assignment of an arbitrary sequence of characters by the Identity Provider or Service Provider to identify a Principal. The opaque handle has meaning only in the context of the relationship between the Identity Provider and the Service Provider. Thus a Principal's identity and actions are harder to track as the Principal navigates among SPs.

The opaque handle mechanism allows the Service Provider to know which of their own customers, with local accounts, has navigated to the site. It facilitates identity federation between the Principal's accounts at the Identity Provider and the Service Provider *without* transferring any PII about the Principal to the Service Provider prior to identity federation.

- ***Anonymous Identity Protocols*** – The Liberty Specifications contain protocols for sharing personalization data with a Service Provider on an anonymous basis to allow for personalization of websites and services without disclosure of the identity of the Principal or requiring the Principal to have an account with the Service Provider. Using this tool, the Principal's actual identity is not released to the Service Provider. Rather, a transient name identifier is given to the Service Provider for each session that the Identity Provider can map to its account for the Principal.

In order for a company to effectively set up a privacy framework and implement fair information practices, Liberty recognizes that there are several points within the Liberty infrastructure where privacy concerns can be addressed and enforced. Liberty calls these "Policy Enforcement Points." For example,

1. The Identity Provider can decide whether or not to authenticate a Principal based on the credentials provided and the Identity Providers authentication policy.
2. At the point where a Service Provider receives an authentication from an Identity Provider, the Service Provider can decide whether a Principal's authentication context is sufficient based on the Service Provider's authentication policy.
3. At the point where an attribute requester requests Attribute Provider information for certain attributes from a Discovery Service, the Discovery Service can decide whether to facilitate an attribute requester's interaction with an Attribute Provider, based on a Principal-managed policy and the Discovery Service's policy.
4. At the point where an Attribute Provider has received the attribute request, the Attribute Provider may mediate an attribute requester's access to its services and data, based on a Principal-managed policy and the Attribute Provider's policy.

As noted previously, Principals should have the capability to specify policies governing access to their attributes. These Principal-specific policies could be defined by assigning some predefined rules to a particular class of attribute requesters, or via a user interface enabling Principals to define sophisticated rules. Also, the Service Provider, Identity Provider, Attribute Provider, and Discovery Service will need to write policies governing their infrastructure and their service. In any event, Principal specific permission rules should override default rules if they intersect. Most of these policies can be enforced at the Policy Enforcement Points numbers 3 and 4 identified above.

The access controls noted above can be used by an implementing company to set up an access management system to determine when and under what conditions various requesters may have access to requested information. The access decisions may be determined based on (i) what information is requested, (ii) what the requester wants to do with that information, (iii) the characteristics of the requester, and/or (iv) whether the owner of the requested information (i.e., the Principal) is online with a certain authentication context, etc. An implementing company should comply with its fair information practices when setting up its access management system.

In addition, by using the usage directives, implementing companies should give Principals the opportunity to specify how their personal information will be disclosed or accessed in a default context. In addition, under the Liberty Specifications, Principals can create the opportunity to validate, override, or update the Principal's default policies at request time by specifying obligations in their policies that are fulfilled by returning *permission exceptions* to requesting attribute requesters. These permission exceptions signal that the Principal must interactively validate, override, update or supply her instructions in the context of a particular transaction.

7. Security

Security is a critical component of any computing system, providing the necessary safeguards for data protection and integrity. Security is also a fundamental basis of consumer trust and confidence in any computing environment. As with privacy, it is incumbent upon all participants to provide and practice good security. Liberty-Enabled Providers must establish and maintain the level of security appropriate to the transaction and the data. Principals should be equally vigilant to protect themselves from security risks inherent in the architecture of the Internet.

LIBERTY ALLIANCE PROJECT
Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

Social vulnerabilities abound when deploying Internet technology; several factors contribute. A non-exhaustive list includes: human nature, rogues, buggy software, insecure systems, bad designs, poor human interfaces, and a large installed computing base of untrusted systems. These factors present a spectrum of opportunities for malicious behavior. Robust security precautions and implementations help to limit such opportunities. The Liberty Alliance specifications are based on existing, well known Internet protocols and mechanisms. Security weaknesses inherent in the architecture of the Internet are neither increased nor eliminated by the Liberty Specifications.

Security builds trust between the user and system and allows the user to let the system perform certain actions – therefore security will actually play a significant role in every system and environment. In a perfect situation, security is built as an almost invisible but strong service, which will protect the user against different attacks and/or minimize possible negative consequences.

Strong security is an essential part of a well-working network service solution, and Liberty offers security measures and guidance designed to prevent attackers from causing troubles for Liberty-Enabled Providers or for the Principal. The Liberty Alliance has referenced both the work of the OECD and the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC) in providing this security framework.

The U.S. Federal Trade Commission examined security issues in 2000. The Final Report of the FTC Advisory Committee on Online Access and Security bears quoting in part:

Most consumers – and most companies – would expect commercial Web sites that collect and hold personal data to provide some kind of security for that data. Identifying the most effective and efficient solution for data security is a difficult task. Security is application-specific and process-specific. Different types of data warrant different levels of protection.

Security – and the resulting protection for personal data – can be set at almost any level depending on the costs one is willing to incur, not only in dollars but in inconvenience for users and administrators of the system. Security is contextual: to achieve appropriate security, security professionals typically vary the level of protection based on the value of the information on the systems, the cost of particular security measures and the costs of a security failure in terms of both liability and public confidence.

To complicate matters, both computer systems and methods of violating computer security are evolving at a rapid clip, with the result that computer security is more a process than a state. Security that was adequate yesterday is inadequate today. Anyone who sets detailed computer security standards – whether for a company, an industry, or a government body – must be prepared to revisit and revise those standards on a constant basis.

When companies address this problem, they should develop a program that is a continuous life cycle designed to meet the needs of the particular organization or industry. The cycle should begin with an assessment of risk; the establishment and implementation of a security architecture and management of policies and procedures based on the identified risk; training programs; regular audits and continuous monitoring; and periodic reassessment of risk. These essential elements can be designed to meet the unique requirements of organizations regardless of size.¹⁰

In addition to the above FTC recommendations, the Liberty Alliance offers the OECD Security principles for consideration by implementing companies in accordance with particular service offerings in various jurisdictions. These nine principles are applicable to all Liberty-Enabled Providers, or in OECD terms, “participants.” The specific responsibilities of any Liberty-Enabled Provider will vary according to their roles. The OECD Security Principles are:¹¹

1) Awareness

Participants should be aware of the need for security of information systems and networks and what they can do to enhance security.

¹⁰ US Federal Trade Commission Advisory Committee, “Final Report on Online Access and Security.”

¹¹ OECD, “OECD Guidelines for the Security of Information Systems and Networks: Towards a Culture of Security.”

Awareness of the risks and available safeguards is the first line of defense for the security of information systems and networks. Information systems and networks can be affected by both internal and external risks. Participants should understand that security failures may significantly harm systems and networks under their control. They should also be aware of the potential harm to others arising from interconnectivity and interdependency. Participants should be aware of the configuration of, and available updates for, their system, its place within networks, good practices that they can implement to enhance security, and the needs of other participants.

2) Responsibility

All participants are responsible for the security of information systems and networks.

Participants depend upon interconnected local and global information systems and networks and should understand their responsibility for the security of those information systems and networks. They should be accountable in a manner appropriate to their individual roles. Participants should review their own policies, practices, measures, and procedures regularly and assess whether these are appropriate to their environment. Those who develop, design and supply products and services should address system and network security and distribute appropriate information including updates in a timely manner so that users are better able to understand the security functionality of products and services and their responsibilities related to security.

3) Response

Participants should act in a timely and co-operative manner to prevent, detect and respond to security incidents.

Recognizing the interconnectivity of information systems and networks and the potential for rapid and widespread damage, participants should act in a timely and co-operative manner to address security incidents. They should share information about threats and vulnerabilities, as appropriate, and implement procedures for rapid and effective co-operation to prevent, detect and respond to security incidents. Where permissible, this may involve cross-border information sharing and co-operation.

4) Ethics

Participants should respect the legitimate interests of others.

Given the pervasiveness of information systems and networks in our societies, participants need to recognize that their action or inaction may harm others. Ethical conduct is therefore crucial and participants should strive to develop and adopt best practices and to promote conduct that recognizes security needs and respects the legitimate interests of others.

5) Democracy

The security of information systems and networks should be compatible with essential values of a democratic society.

Security should be implemented in a manner consistent with the values recognized by democratic societies including the freedom to exchange thoughts and ideas, the free flow of information, the confidentiality of information and communication, the appropriate protection of personal information, openness and transparency.

6) Risk assessment

Participants should conduct risk assessments.

Risk assessment identifies threats and vulnerabilities and should be sufficiently broad-based to encompass key internal and external factors, such as technology, physical and human factors, policies and third-party services with security implications. Risk assessment will allow determination of the acceptable level of risk and assist the selection of appropriate controls to manage the risk of potential harm to information systems and networks in light of the nature and importance of the information to be protected. Because of the growing interconnectivity of information systems, risk assessment should include consideration of the potential harm that may originate from others or be caused to others.

*7) Security design and implementation**Participants should incorporate security as an essential element of information systems and networks.*

Systems, networks and policies need to be properly designed, implemented and co-ordinated to optimize security. A major, but not exclusive, focus of this effort is the design and adoption of appropriate safeguards and solutions to avoid or limit potential harm from identified threats and vulnerabilities. Both technical and non-technical safeguards and solutions are required and should be proportionate to the value of the information on the organization's systems and networks. Security should be a fundamental element of all products, services, systems and networks, and an integral part of system design and architecture. For end users, security design and implementation consists largely of selecting and configuring products and services for their system.

*8) Security management**Participants should adopt a comprehensive approach to security management.*

Security management should be based on risk assessment and should be dynamic, encompassing all levels of participants' activities and all aspects of their operations. It should include forward-looking responses to emerging threats and address prevention, detection and response to incidents, systems recovery, ongoing maintenance, review and audit. Information system and network security policies, practices, measures and procedures should be co-ordinated and integrated to create a coherent system of security. The requirements of security management depend upon the level of involvement, the role of the participant, the risk involved and system requirements.

*9) Reassessment**Participants should review and reassess the security of information systems and networks, and make appropriate modifications to security policies, practices, measures and procedures.*

New and changing threats and vulnerabilities are continuously discovered. Participants should continually review, reassess and modify all aspects of security to deal with these evolving risks.

8. Internet Security Vulnerabilities and Precautions

Regardless of the fair information principles and privacy practices adopted, security remains a universal vital tenet of fair information practices. Security vulnerabilities exist due to both system defects and human error or malice. There is a risk that these vulnerabilities will be exploited in an attack of some form. Attacks have different properties depending on which vulnerabilities are being exploited. Below are descriptions of the most common types of attacks.

- **Denial-of-service.** Prevents authorized users from accessing the system resource or delays authorized operations and functions. This can cause severe problems, e.g., for the Liberty-enabled providers' business and brand.
- **Dictionary.** An attack that uses a technique of successively trying all the words in some large, exhaustive list. This is a lesser kind of brute-force attack generally targeted at password authentication mechanisms. This kind of attack may lead, for example, to the impersonation of a user if an attacker can break the user's password.
- **Brute-force.** An attack that uses a technique of successively trying all possible combinations. This kind of attack may also lead, for example, to impersonation of the user if an attack can break the user's password. This attack requires more resources from an attacker compared to a dictionary attack but will provide better results when there is not a good dictionary available or when passwords are protected against being recognizable words.
- **Replay.** An attack in which a valid data transmission is maliciously or fraudulently repeated, either by the originator or by an adversary who intercepts the data and retransmits it, possibly as part of a spoofing attack.
- **Spoofing.** An attack in which one system entity illegitimately poses as (assumes the identity of) another entity. There is no way to prevent an attacker from erecting a false facade that mimics the appearance and

behavior of a legitimate website. If an attacker can lure the user into visiting such a site, then the user may be fooled into believing he/she is visiting the authentic website. If the fake site happens to imitate a site at which the user typically logs in, then the fake website may be able to collect the users credentials, such as, an account name and password. The attacker could then use this information to impersonate the user at a legitimate website. There is nothing about this attack, or the weaknesses exploited to carry it out, that are specific to Liberty Specifications. It is a general vulnerability that both Principals and Liberty-Enabled Providers must guard against.

Our purpose in presenting potential routes of attack is to explain the security vulnerabilities inherent in the Internet, so that Liberty-Enabled Providers are aware of the various risks and threats and thus are able to safeguard against such risks and threats. Implementers should closely monitor security risks noted in the industry, because the situation changes rapidly, with new bugs found and existing ones corrected. Regardless of which avenue of attack is exploited, several common security weaknesses can exacerbate the potential for breach. The following sections discuss some of the more well known Internet insecurities and recommends precautions that may be taken.

8.1. Common Weaknesses

Weak Passwords – So-called “reusable passwords” are a typical means of authenticating users. Reusable means that the password is constant and used multiple times to gain access to an account. User may choose weak, “guessable” passwords which render their account susceptible to relatively simple guessing attacks (also known as “dictionary attacks”). The risks of weak passwords are significantly compounded when users choose the same password to access different accounts. This is especially true in a single sign-on environment.

Using arbitrary, unchecked, reusable passwords in conjunction with a single sign-on environment means that multiple accounts may be compromised at once by guessing one password. If the user were to choose different, unrelated passwords for each site, then the multiple sites would be better protected. But if the user does not, then the vulnerability of the multiple sites is essentially the same with or without the single sign-on environment.

Where appropriate, Identity Providers should support other forms of authentication in addition to User ID and password. In addition, Identity Providers should inform Principals how to formulate and protect their passwords from unauthorized use. In the case of password usage, IdPs can also use password-checking mechanisms to check the Principal’s password. However Liberty Specifications do not force these functionalities and their usage is dependent on the IdP.

Embedded Login Forms – The ID-FF Architecture Overview 1.2 describes a deployment scenario where an Identity Provider’s login form is embedded within a page presented by a Service Provider. Users often prefer the seamlessness of this embedded form mechanism, which submits the users’ credentials back to the Identity Provider. However, embedded forms may permit the inadvertent exposure of Identity Provider credentials to the Service Provider in unencrypted clear text. Thus, when using authentication via embedded form, deployers should have contracts in place requiring the protection of embedded login forms.

Publicly Available Terminals– If a Principal accesses a Liberty-Enabled site using a public browser (such as at an airport kiosk or Internet cafe), there may be no rapid way for the user to terminate the session. If a Principal leaves a public browser without fully terminating the session, a subsequent Internet user may have access to the Principal’s browser session.

To prevent session hijacking at a public browser, short-session times are recommended for Identity Providers. This, of course, creates a problem for Principals who leave a browser session inactive, but intend to return after some time period. This is a classic tradeoff problem, and the Liberty Alliance recommendation is in favor of security.

In addition, when during a slightly shorter interval the account shows activity by the Principal at a Service Provider, the Service Provider with whom the activity is occurring sends a refresh message to the Identity Provider. One plausible way to perform the “refresh” is for the Service Provider to send an Authentication Request (AuthnRequest) message to the Identity Provider over the preferred channel containing some defined combination of the AuthnRequest parameters, thus signaling that “the user is still active over here.”

We recommend that Identity Providers have a mechanism that enables the Principal to later return using a different browser session and terminate the previous session. We also recommend that a change password feature be available

which challenges the user for their old password before accepting the new one. In addition, the Liberty Alliance currently intends to provide a refresh message mechanism in future versions of the Liberty Specifications.

Weak Cryptography – One of the most vexing issues in securing web services is that the currently installed browser base includes many browsers that only have weak 40-bit cryptography enabled. It is well known that 40-bit ciphers are considered weak and can be compromised with minimal computing effort. This poses a risk since users' encrypted communication may be easily recovered to the unencrypted form. However, the Liberty Specifications recommend cipher suites that minimally have effective secret key sizes of 112-bits. In case of signatures and public key cryptosystems the recommended minimum key length is 1024-bits.

8.2. Browser Vulnerabilities

Social vulnerabilities abound when deploying Internet technology; many factors contribute. A non-exhaustive list includes: human nature, rogues, buggy software, insecure systems, bad designs, poor human interfaces, and a large installed computing base of untrusted systems. These factors present a spectrum of opportunities to exploit one or a combination of weaknesses.

When using Internet browsers, we also need to consider their potential weaknesses. It is widely known that browsers have security-related weaknesses which can lead to information leakage. This best practices document provides information about such vulnerabilities and tips on how to avoid the most common vulnerabilities. Specifically, the security considerations section of the Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification describes potential vulnerabilities that are present as a consequence of implementation decisions and gives guidance in constructing name identifiers, which are a privacy-enhancing mechanism.¹² For more information about the secure implementation of Liberty version 2, please refer to the Liberty Alliance.¹³ This section discusses specific browser weakness and suggests mitigation strategies. In the next section we examine security issues related to well-established protocols.

Account Federation – The Liberty Specifications enable the Principal to federate identities, binding accounts together. If done improperly, the binding could release PII. The Liberty Specifications avoid this problem by recommending implementations that generate opaque handles using arbitrary sequences of characters that map into the account. The Liberty Specifications provide for the exchange of opaque handles to federate accounts. Additionally, Identity Providers are required to create unique opaque handles for each of the Principal's federated accounts. This diminishes the threat of collusion and tracking.

Cookie Exposure – Many web browsers implement a technology known as HTTP cookies. The intended function of cookies is to supplement web protocols with state management (or session) capabilities. Cookies can be transient (used just for the lifetime of the browser session) or persistent. A persistent cookie is saved to permanent storage so that it is available the next time the user starts a web browser. The various manners in which cookies are used may sometimes violate users' privacy. For example, a cookie may collect PII without a user's consent. In addition, web browsers and other Internet software have been shown to be susceptible to inadvertent disclosure of cookies to unauthorized parties. Since a cookie may contain PII, or could even be used to impersonate a Principal, this represents an additional security and privacy risk.

The Liberty Specifications do not mandate the use of cookies, but allows for an optional cookie-based mechanism which is used to simplify single sign-on. The information in this cookie is not a privacy risk since the only information revealed are the locations or websites at which the Principal authenticates. This particular cookie is referred to as the "common domain cookie" in the Liberty Specifications.

However, in addition to the common domain cookie, it is recognized that many websites, in order to provide a "seamless" user experience, will rely on the state management properties of cookies. Note that this issue is not specific to the Liberty Specifications. Any website that uses cookies for state management – with or without Liberty Specifications – is subject to the risks regarding the exposure of cookie contents. The actual risk depends on how the website constructs their cookies, the lifetime of the cookie, and the cookie contents. If a cookie were to present the above mentioned risks, an attacker would need to discover a software defect or have access to a Principal's computer

¹² John Kemp and Tom Wason, "ID-FF Bindings & Profiles Specification."

¹³ Jonathan Tourzan, "ID-WSF Architecture Overview." , ID-WSF Security and Privacy Guidelines and ID-WSF Security Profiles.

in order to exploit the vulnerability. Principals should normally have the opportunity and guidance necessary to decline cookies. For service offerings that are cookie dependent, care should be taken that the cookie does not collect or store PII.

Cross Site Scripting – Cross Site Scripting (CSS) was originally published as a CERT advisory [CSS] in February 2000. To date this is still a very common threat and has been used to trick browsers to make incorrect trust decisions such as erroneously trusting malicious code.

A CSS vulnerability could potentially be used to collect HTTP cookies or the URL history and disseminate the data to an unauthorized party. Note that this is not an issue specific to the Liberty Specifications. Combining a CSS vulnerability with a social vulnerability could potentially fully compromise a user's accounts in a single sign-on environment. The CSS vulnerability is related to browser security and avoiding this problem requires changes in browsers' architecture, which is beyond the scope of the Liberty Alliance. However, Principals should be warned as to the potential CSS vulnerability and take necessary precautions, including being very selective and limiting their use of hyperlinks in emails or instant messages to only those communications from known or trusted senders.

Related Documents/RDF – The "Related Documents Feature" (RDF) implemented in both Netscape and Internet Explorer, "Smart Browsing/What's Related" and "Show Related Documents" respectively, is known to be a very leaky channel. Essentially when the feature is enabled, the browser reports to the RDF service the referring URL and the URL to which the browser is being navigated. Like CSS, this vulnerability is inherent in the architecture of the browser. Principals should be warned of the potential for leakage and may wish to avoid the use of RDF in some circumstances.

8.3. Protocol Vulnerabilities

The Liberty Specifications were built on existing Internet technologies, meaning both browsers and protocols. The previous section discussed browser weaknesses. We now turn to protocol weaknesses. The core Internet protocols used whenever online include the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), the Internet Protocol version 4 (IP), the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and the Domain Name System (DNS). When browsing the Web there is another layer of protocol with the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). These protocols are insecure. They do not support fundamental security properties of integrity, confidentiality or authenticity. In the event that a website needs to securely communicate with the browser, the Transport Layer Security version 1.0 (TLS) or Secure Socket Layer version 3.0 (SSL) protocol is inserted in a layer between TCP/IP and HTTP. This combination yields the protocol scheme known as HTTPS.

The most common tool used to access Internet resources – and thus make use of the protocols mentioned above – is the web browser. Web browsers also have insecure aspects. The remainder of this section describes vulnerabilities of these protocols and browsers and the risks and threats they pose. Please note that the issues discussed herein are present whenever anyone browses the Internet – regardless of whether Liberty Specifications are being used.

DNS – A DNS server resolves the host names found in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) into a numeric Internet address. There are two well-known ways that DNS spoofing can occur, and both can result in a user connecting to a rogue site and mistakenly believing it is real.

First, there is no assurance in the protocol that replies to queries are genuine and have not been tampered with. It has been demonstrated that rogue DNS address records can contaminate the cache of an otherwise trusted resolver. The obvious threat this spoofing attack presents is that the peer host may end up connecting to the rogue site.

The second DNS vulnerability is the possibility of a compromised DNS server. If a DNS server is hijacked, then what seems to be legitimate address resolution may also result in the user connecting to a rogue website.

In both scenarios the user has no way of knowing that he/she is not communicating with the correct host. This contributes to the "spoofing" social vulnerability discussed above

To be more resilient to these sorts of attacks, deployers can utilize SSL server authentication via HTTPS. Generally the subject name in the public key certificate bears the domain name of the server, which should match the host name in the URL used for contacting the server. Thus, along with proper certificate path validation of the server domain

name from the certificate, one can verify that both that name and the host name in the URL indeed match, and are bona fide.¹⁴

Structural remedies for the DNS vulnerabilities are available but not widely deployed. The Domain Name System Security Extensions define extensions which integrity protect the records returned through the use of digital signatures. Also, the security extensions provide for the optional authentication of DNS protocol interactions.

HTTP – HTTP, the prevalent web protocol, makes extensive use of URLs. URLs have a syntax enabling the embedding of adjunct information. The Liberty Specification makes extensive use of this capability. At times, such embedded information may contain sensitive data. HTTP implementations must convey and consume URLs; thus the information embedded in a URL must be visible to the endpoints. Thus there are no provisions in HTTP for protecting such sensitive, URL-embedded information. Therefore, the onus is upon HTTP implementations – browsers and web servers – to avoid inadvertently disclosing this information. The Liberty Specifications recommend implementers protect the sensitive data carried in URLs. The recommended method to protect this information in transit is for the Service Provider to protect the sensitive relay state information. Since the Service Provider is both the producer and consumer of the relay state information, the Liberty Specifications do not mandate what specific cryptographic algorithms and primitives to use. The acquired data must be stored securely. URL leaks are discussed in more detail below.

URL – The Liberty Specifications may be used to convey sensitive information between parties in URLs. There are numerous methods in which referenced URLs can leak. For example, most browsers maintain a history of visited web addresses; browsers may report to the visited website the referring URL and most websites maintain logs of activity by capturing the URLs being requested as well as the referring URL. In addition, web proxy servers are deployed within intranets to facilitate passing web traffic through the corporate firewall, and proxy servers also maintain logs of the URLs requested. Finally, firewalls typically log traffic passing through them for auditing purposes. All of these retention points pose a risk if the data in the URL is sensitive and exposed to an unauthorized party.

In designing the Liberty Specifications, common-sense efforts were made to minimize the chance of disclosing the information conveyed in the URL to an unauthorized party. Liberty Specifications prescribe the following two recommendations:

First, the Liberty Specifications recommend that entry points and subsequent protocol exchanges be initiated over a secure communication transport, TLS or SSL, which implies the URLs should specify the HTTPS scheme. By following this guidance, sensitive information contained in URLs is available only at the points where it is produced, relayed (via the browser) and consumed. More simply stated, unauthorized observers cannot see the exchanged URLs and confidential information in them.

Second, the Liberty Specifications recommend that state information passed in the URL be integrity and confidentiality protected. This is a privacy enhancing measure that limits the exposure of the Principal's Service Provider activities. It also protects the Service Provider from initiating actions on behalf of the user if the state information were fabricated or tampered with.

Network Time Protocol (NTP) Weaknesses – Both the Liberty Specifications and the Security Assertion Markup Language version 1.0 specifications employ time-based mechanisms to qualify the validity of a message and the assertions they contain. This suggests that the clocks of participating systems are synchronized so that the validity periods can be accurately verified and honored. The time-based qualifiers may also be used as countermeasures against replay attack (described above). By enforcing the validity periods, we minimize the attackers window of opportunity. The smaller the time window between the generation of an assertion and its consumption, the better the security of the protocol. Therefore, if such a countermeasure is deployed, then it will be necessary to keep the clocks of the participating sites synchronized.

NTP is designed to keep the clocks of distributed systems synchronized. NTP is not a secure protocol and measures must be taken to prevent an attacker from disrupting the service. To defend against a rogue system influencing the synchronization process by broadcasting invalid time information, authentication and access controls should be used to

¹⁴ Procedures for performing such name matching, also known as a "server identity check," are specified in C. Newman, 1999 and J. Hodges, R. Morgan, and M. Wahl, 2000.

limit potential synchronization sources. A more thorough coverage of this topic can be found in the Sun Blueprint Series.¹⁵

8.4. Summary

The Liberty Alliance developed a set of standards for single sign-on and federated network identity building on currently-deployed browsers. The vulnerabilities described above, from the serious ones of Cross-Site Scripting to the more arcane problems of Network Time Protocol, are problems of the underlying infrastructure. The Liberty Alliance has made every effort to provide secure standards, but the standards are built on top of insecure existing Internet protocols and, unavoidably, present potential vulnerabilities. This is not to suggest that the Liberty Specifications are insecure, but that implementations are dependent on all the underlying protocols. Thus, care should be taken in implementation and the Liberty Alliance Implementation Guidelines should be carefully followed.¹⁶

9. Terminology

Below please find a glossary of certain terms used throughout this document. For more information regarding Liberty terms, please see the Liberty Glossary.¹⁷

Access control

The act of mediating requested access to a resource based on privilege attributes of the requester and control attributes of the requested resource.

Attribute

A distinct characteristic of a Principal. A Principal's attributes are said to describe it.

Attribute class

A predefined set of attributes, such as the constituents of a Principal's name (prefix, first name, middle name, last name, and suffix). Liberty entities may standardize such classes.

Attribute Provider (AP)

The attribute provider (AP) provides ID-PP information. Sometimes called a ID-PP provider, the AP is an ID-WSF web service that hosts the ID-PP.

Authentication

The process of verifying the ability of a communication party to "talk" in the name of a Principal.

Authentication Domain (AD)

A formal community of Liberty-enabled entities that interact using a set of well-established common rules.

Authentication session

The period of time starting after A has authenticated B and until A stops trusting B's identity assertion and requires reauthentication. Also known as "session," it is the state between a successful login and a successful logout by the Principal.

Authorization

A right or a permission that is granted to a system entity to perform an action.

Credentials

Known data attesting to the truth of certain stated facts.

¹⁵ J. Hodges, R. Morgan, and M. Wahl, 2000.

¹⁶ Susan Landau, "Liberty Security and Privacy Overview."

¹⁷ Tom Wason, "Liberty Glossary."

Data

Any information that a Principal provides to an Identity Provider or a service provider.

Discovery Service (DS)

An entity that has the ability to direct attribute requesters to the relevant attribute provider who provides the requested classes of attributes for the specified Principal.

Federate

To link accounts at two or more entities together.

Federated architecture

An architecture that supports multiple entities provisioning Principals among peers within the Liberty Authentication Domain.

Federation

An association comprising any number of Service Providers and Identity Providers.

Identity

The essence of an entity, often described by its characteristics.

Identity federation

Associating, connecting, or binding multiple accounts for a given Principal at various Liberty-enabled entities within an Authentication Domain.

Identity Provider (IdP)

A Liberty-enabled entity that creates, maintains, and manages identity information for Principals and provides Principal authentication to other Service Providers within an Authentication Domain. An Identity Provider may also be a Service Provider.

Liberty-Enabled Provider

As used herein, and only herein, LEP may be either an Attribute Provider (AP), Discovery Service (DS), Service provider (SP), or Identity Provider (IdP) who collects, transfers, or receives the Personally Identifiable Information (PII) of a Principal.

Permission

Privileges granted to each user with respect to what data that the user is allowed to access and what menus options or commands he or she is allowed to use.

Personally Identifiable Information (PII)

Any data that identifies or locates a particular person, consisting primarily of name, address, telephone number, e-mail address, bank accounts, or other unique identifiers such as Social Security numbers.

Principal

A Principal is an entity that can acquire a federated identity, that is capable of making decisions, and to which authenticated actions are performed on its behalf. Examples of Principals include an individual user, a group of individuals, a corporation, other legal entities, or a component of the Liberty architecture.

Privacy

Proper handling of personal information throughout its life cycle, consistent with the preferences of the data subject.

Profile

Data comprising the broad set of attributes that may be maintained for an identity, over and beyond its identifiers and the data required to authenticate under that identity. At least some of those attributes (for example, addresses, preferences, card numbers) are provided by the Principal.

Rights Expression Languages (RELs)

A machine-based language that enables communication about usage directives. RELs allow an information provider to request intended uses of information before the information is exchanged and to designate approved uses for information exchanged during a particular transaction.

Service Provider (SP)

An entity that provides services and/or goods to Principals.

Usage directives

Directives that specify the manner in which attributes can be used, stored, and disclosed.

10. References

- BBB Online, Inc. and the Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc. "A Review of Federal and State Privacy Laws." http://www.bbbonline.org/UnderstandingPrivacy/library/fed_statePrivLaws.pdf (accessed April 11, 2003).
- Berman, J., and D. Mulligan. "Privacy in the Digital Age: Work in Progress." 23 Nova Law Review 2 1999. <http://www.cdt.org/publications/lawreview/1999nova.shtml>.
- Canadian Parliament. Canadian Privacy Act. S.C. 2000, c.5 (2003).
- Cantor, Scott, Kemp, John, eds. (19 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification," Version 1.2-13, Liberty Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- CDT Web Site. "Privacy Basics: Fair Information Practices." <http://www.cdt.org/privacy/guide/basic/fips.html> (accessed August 6, 2003).
- Center for Democracy and Technology (CDT) Web Site. "Data Privacy." <http://www.cdt.org/privacy> (accessed August 6, 2003).
- Ellison, Gary, ed. (25 July 2003) "Liberty ID-WSF Security Mechanisms," Version 1.0-17, Liberty Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- European Parliament and the Council of 12 July 2002. Directive 2002/58/EC on privacy and electronic communications. http://europa.eu.int/smartapi/cgi/sga_doc?smartapi!celexapi!prod!CELEXnumdoc&lg=en&numdoc=32002L0058&model=guichett (accessed April 11, 2003).
- European Parliament and the Council of 24 October 1995. Directive 95/46/EC on data protection. http://www.privacy.org/pi/intl_orgs/ec/eudp.html (accessed April 11, 2003).
- GBDe. "Personal Data Privacy Protection Guidelines." <http://www.gbde.org/privacy1.html> (accessed August 6, 2003).
- Hi-Ethics Web Site. www.hi-ethics.org (accessed April 2003).
- Hi-Ethics. "Health Internet Ethics: Ethical Principles For Offering Internet Health Services to Consumers." <http://www.hi-ethics.org/Principles/index.asp> (accessed April 2003).
- Hodges, J., R. Morgan, and M. Wahl. "Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (v3): Extension for Transport Layer Security." May 2000. <http://www.isi.edu/in-notes/rfc2830.txt> (accessed April 11, 2003).
- Hodges, Jeff, ed. (October 11, 2002). "Version 1.0 Errata." Version 1.0, Liberty Alliance Project. http://www.projectliberty.org/specs/archive/v1_0/draft-liberty-version-1-errata-00.pdf.
- International Security, Trust and Privacy Alliance (ISTPA). "Privacy Framework v.1.1." <http://www.istpa.org/> (accessed April 11, 2003).
- Kemp, John, Wason, Tom, eds. (25 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification," Version 1.2-14, Liberty Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- Landau, Susan, ed. (24 July 2003). "Liberty ID-WSF Security and Privacy Overview," Draft version 1.0-09, Liberty Alliance Project.

LIBERTY ALLIANCE PROJECT
Privacy and Security Best Practices

Version 2.0

-
- 1032 Liberty Alliance. "Security Bulletin." October 10, 2002,
1033 http://www.projectliberty.org/specs/archive/v1_0/security_bulletin.html.
- 1034 Linn, John, ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty Trust Models Guidelines," Draft version 1.0-07, Liberty Alliance
1035 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- 1036 Madsen, Paul, ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty Authentication Context Specification," Version 1.2-07, Liberty
1037 Alliance Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- 1038 NAI. "Self-Regulatory Principles." http://www.networkadvertising.org/aboutnai_principles.asp (accessed April
1039 2003).
- 1040 Newman, C. "Using TLS with IMAP, POP3 and ACAP." RFC 2595, June 1999. [http://www.isi.edu/in-](http://www.isi.edu/in-notes/rfc2595.txt)
1041 [notes/rfc2595.txt](http://www.isi.edu/in-notes/rfc2595.txt) (accessed April 11, 2003).
- 1042 OECD. "OECD Guidelines for the Security of Information Systems and Networks: Towards a Culture of
1043 Security." <http://www.oecd.org/pdf/M00033000/M00033182.pdf> (accessed April 11, 2003).
- 1044 OPA. "Guidelines for Online Privacy Policies." <http://www.privacyalliance.org/resources/ppguidelines.shtml>
1045 (accessed April 2003).
- 1046 Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). Web Pages regarding privacy and security
1047 concerns. <http://www.oecd.org/EN/home/0,,EN-home-43-1-no-no-no-43,00.html> (accessed April 2003).
- 1048 Privacy International, "Privacy and Human Rights: An International Survey of Privacy Laws and Developments,
1049 2002." <http://www.privacyinternational.org/survey/phr2002/> (accessed April 2003).
- 1050 The Global Business Dialogue on Electronic Commerce (GBDe) Web Site. <http://www.gbde.org/gbde2003.html>
1051 (accessed August 6, 2003).
- 1052 The Network Advertising Initiative (NAI) Web Site. <http://www.networkadvertising.org/> (accessed April 2003).
- 1053 The Online Privacy Alliance (OPA) Web Site. <http://www.privacyalliance.org/> (accessed April 2003).
- 1054 U.S. Federal Trade Commission Advisory Committee. "Final Report on Online Access and Security." (2000)
1055 <http://www3.ftc.gov/acoas/papers/acoasdraft1.htm> (accessed April 11, 2003).
- 1056 USCA. 15 U.S.C.A. § 6501 (2000); 15 U.S.C.A. § 6801 et. seq. (1999); 42 U.S.C.A. §§ 1320(d) et. seq. (1996);
1057 15 U.S.C.A. § 45(a) (2000).
- 1058 Wason, Thomas, ed. (06 August 2003). "Liberty Architecture Glossary," Version 1.2-09, Liberty Alliance
1059 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- 1060 Wason, Thomas, ed. (25 July 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview," Version 1.2-03, Liberty Alliance
1061 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- 1062 Wason, Tom, ed. (14 Apr 2003). "Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines," Version 1.2-08, Liberty Alliance
1063 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.
- 1064 Weitzel, David, ed. (August 1, 2003). "Liberty ID-WSF Implementation Guide," Version 1.0-01, Liberty Alliance
1065 Project. <http://www.projectliberty.org/specs>.

Exhibit A

**IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE**

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS)	
MACHINES CORPORATION,)	
)	
Plaintiff,)	
)	Civil Action No. 16-122-LPS
v.)	
)	JURY TRIAL DEMANDED
GROUPON, INC.,)	
)	
Defendant.)	
)	

**SECOND AMENDED IDENTIFICATION OF PREVIOUSLY DISCLOSED
AUTHENTICATION OBJECTIONS**

Pursuant to the Court’s Order, *see* D.I. 323, Plaintiff International Business Machines Corporation (“IBM”) makes the following identification of previously disclosed authentication objections to documents on Defendant Groupon, Inc.’s (“Groupon”) trial exhibit list. This identification is specific to IBM’s previously identified authenticity objections to documents on Groupon Exhibit List and does not waive or limit IBM’s other objections, including objections on other grounds, objections to other exhibits, and objections to inaccurate descriptions. IBM reserves the right to clarify, amend, modify, and supplement the information contained in these disclosures, including based on further discussions between the parties to narrow the issues before the Court.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0022	Iyengar Dep. Ex. 3 - Excerpt from Spinning the Web, Yuval Fisher (1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of portions of a book purportedly released in 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0029	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 5 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - All Nashville Deals & Coupons (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0030	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 6 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Jiffy Lube - Up To 47% Off - Madison, TN (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0031	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 7 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Groupon Goods - Toys, Electronics, Clothing & More! Save on All You Need with Groupon (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0032	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 8 - Groupon Webpage Screenshot - Deals and Coupons for Restaurants, Fitness, Travel, Shopping, Beauty, and more (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0033	Schmidt Dep. Ex. 9 - Source for website - https://www.groupon.com /browse /nashville?context =local (02/12/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0057	Give Me Liberty . . . (06/01/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0058	HTML and CGI Unleashed (Contents of CD) (01/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this CD was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has not evidence showing this material is a true and accurate copy of a CD allegedly

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		provided with "HTML and CGI Unleashed" allegedly released in January of 1995. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0063	Novell Debuts New digitalme 'In- the-Net' Service (10/05/1999)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a press release purportedly from October of 1999, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0067	Shibboleth-Architecture DRAFT v05 (05/02/2002)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from May of 2002, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document is marked as a draft.
DX-0094	Domain Delphi: Retrieving Documents Online (04/01/1986)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1986, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0107	The Xerox Star: A Retrospective (09/01/1989)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in September of 1989, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0148	Liberty Technical Glossary, version 1.3 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0149	Liberty Metadata Description and Discovery Specification, version 2.0-02 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Further, while Groupon claims this document is

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		version 2.0-02, the exhibit is marked as a DRAFT.
DX-0150	Liberty ID-FF Authentication Context Specification, version 1.2 (12/14/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0151	Liberty ID-FF Implementation Guidelines, version 1.2 (04/18/2004)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in April of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0152	Bindings and Profiles for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML), version 1.1, OASIS Standard (09/02/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in September of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0157	Advertising on Videotex: What We've Learned (1984)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly from 1984, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.</p>
DX-0160	The Architecture of Videotex Systems (01/01/1983)	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.</p>
DX-0162	CompuServe Information Manager ("CIM")	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.</p>
DX-0163	CompuServe Navigator User's Guide (01/01/1988)	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a user guide purportedly from January of 1998, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports.</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0164	CompuServe User's Guide - Information Manager for Windows	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0165	CSNavBrochure 08-1988	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document purportedly from August of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0167	HTML & CGI – Unleashed	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0177	NAPLPS: Beyond Videotex	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The document appears to be an excerpt from an unidentified larger document and it is unclear whether this is an entire article.
DX-0195	Library of Congress Record for The Complete HyperCard Handbook by Danny Goodman (08/03/1987)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.
DX-0196	Library of Congress Record for Danny Goodman's HyperCard's Guide (06/01/1988)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects. And as IBM previously showed, the dates are in conflict. <i>See</i> D.I. 288 at 2-3.
DX-0197	Library of Congress Record for Hypercard Made Easy by William Sanders (07/08/1988)	Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects. And as IBM previously showed, the evidence shows there is no such link. <i>See</i> D.I. 288 at 1.
DX-0202	Weissman Dep. Ex. 27 - Amazon Source Code excerpt	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The only witness with knowledge of Amazon's source code testified as follows: "I'm backing up and saying, even if you ask me this about 1995, when I did work there, I would not be able to prove to you that the source code marked all -- I think as "all files" something '95, that I couldn't prove to you that that was used on the web server."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 94:24-95:9, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0203	Library of Congress Copyright Office Catalog record for Unleashed	<p>Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.</p>
DX-0204	Library of Congress Copyright Office Catalog record for Spinning the Web	<p>Though Groupon has placed a Bates number on this document, it was not produced during discovery. Moreover, Groupon has provided no evidence linking this document to the text it purportedly reflects.</p>
DX-0290	IBM v NYSE v NASDAQ Screenshot CapIQ.PNG	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Moreover, there are no indications of the origins of this image.</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0331	GRPN v GOOGL v AMZN v FB Screenshot CapIQ.PNG	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Moreover, there are no indications of the origins of this image.
DX-0339	KMS: A Distributed Hypermedia System for Managing Knowledge In Organizations (11/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from November of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0343	An Information System Based on Distributed Objects (10/04/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in October of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Further, Groupon's description claims a date of 10/4/1987 while the document itself lists dates of 10/4-8/1987. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0344	Object-oriented GUI application development (01/01/1993)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0348	Design and Implementation of An Electronic Special Interest Magazine (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from January of 1985, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0350	The Power of NAPLPS: Beyond Videotex (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0351	Weissman Dep. Ex. 17 - Apple Macintosh HyperCard User's Guide (01/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of whether or how this document was kept, or showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1987.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0352	The Complete HyperCard Handbook (01/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0353	Weissman Dep. Ex. 18 - HyperCard Developer's Guide (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0354	Weissman Dep. Ex. 20 - HyperCard Made Easy (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0356	Weissman Dep. Ex. 23 - Designing the Star User Interface (04/01/1982)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy of a paper purportedly from April of 1982, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0357	Weissman Dep. Ex. 28 - The star user interface: an overview (01/01/1982)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from January of 1982, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0359	IBM, Sears shooting for '88 entry; New life for videotex (04/06/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document.
DX-0360	Trintex Signs up 42 Advertising Clients; Is Hoping for Launch in Early '88, VP Says, (06/01/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document and appears to omit at least an image.
DX-0363	Trintex to Aim On-Line Ads At Demographic Segments (06/30/1987)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in June of 1987, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Additionally, this document does not even purport to be the original format of any document.
DX-0366	Videotex / Teletext: Principles & Practices (01/01/1985)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1985, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0367	Sears IBM Near a Deal to Sell Prodigy (05/08/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in May of 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0368	Wall Street IBM, Sears to Sell Prodigy for Less Than \$200 Million (05/08/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in May of 1996, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0371	The HTML Sourcebook	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0372	Web*-A Technology to Make Information Available on the Web (04/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in April of 1995, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0373	Excerpt of HTML and CGI Unleashed (01/01/1995)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1995, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0374	Spinning the Web (01/01/1996)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1983, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0375	Physical Exhibit: AllFilesJune1995 - Amazon.com source code	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The only witness with knowledge

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>of Amazon's source code testified as follows: "I'm backing up and saying, even if you ask me this about 1995, when I did work there, I would not be able to prove to you that the source code marked all -- I think as "all files" something '95, that I couldn't prove to you that that was used on the web server."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 94:24-95:9, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0376	Physical Exhibit: AllFilesJune1996 - Amazon.com source code	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. The one witness who has testified about Amazon testified as follows: "Q. Okay. And you cannot say for certain whether the 'all files June 1996' source code repository actually contains the source code that was running on Amazon's website in June of 1996, correct? A. I -- no, it's not possible -- not possible for me to state that."</p> <p>(Davis, Paul, 85:6-85:12, Nov. 16, 2017)</p>
DX-0380	Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview, version 1.2-errata-v1.0	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		<p>whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper from the Liberty Alliance Project, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.</p>
DX-0381	Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification, version 1.2-errata-v2.0 (12/14/2004)	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in December of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.</p>
DX-0382	Liberty ID-FF Bindings and 962 Profiles Specification, version 1.2-errata-v2.0 (09/12/2004)	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in September of 2004, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.</p>
DX-0383	Privacy and Security Best Practices, version 2.0 (11/12/2003)	<p>Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper from the Liberty Alliance Project, nor that has remained unchanged since</p>

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0390	Google authentication Source Code	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0394	Weissman Dep. Ex. 19 - The Complete HyperCard Handbook by Danny Goodman, Expanded 2nd Edition (01/01/1988)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in January of 1988, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0442	Excerpt of Spinning the Web (10/06/2017)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a text purportedly released in October of 2017, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0444	"Prodigy makes the home computer a tool for shopping, travel, banking, education—	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
	and more," by Stanley L. Englehardt, THINK No. 2 (01/01/1989)	was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in January of 1989, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.
DX-0483	Prodigy Trintex articles	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. Though this document was produced by IBM, it was provided to IBM by a third party in a context that provides no support for its authenticity.
DX-0638	http://www.json.org/	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0639	https://mustache.github.io/mustache.5.html (04/01/2014)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0640	https://mustache.github.io/mustache.1.html (02/01/2014)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0641	https://developers.facebook.com/docs/login/permissions/v3.0#reference-public_profile (01/01/2018)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0642	https://developers.google.com/identity/sign-in/web/server-side-flow#implementing_the_one-time-code_flow (10/13/2017)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of what Groupon purports it to be, nor that has remained unchanged. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0643	HyperCard Made Easy (1st ed.)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
		accurate copy, nor that has remained unchanged, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0645	Hinton Dep. Ex. 4- Liberty ID-FF Architecture Overview, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a paper purportedly from November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0646	Hinton Dep. Ex. 5 - Liberty ID-FF Protocols and Schema Specification, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.
DX-0647	Hinton Dep. Ex. 6 - Liberty ID-FF Bindings and Profiles Specification, version 1.2 (11/12/2003)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of a document available in November of 2003, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery.

Ex. No.	Groupon's Description	
DX-0666	"A Security Architecture for Computational Grids" by Ian Foster et al. (1998)	Groupon has provided no evidence of how this document was created and maintained, and whether or when it was updated. Groupon has no evidence showing this document is a true and accurate copy of an article purportedly released in 1998, nor that has remained unchanged since then, as Groupon purports. Groupon did not pursue any such evidence during fact or expert discovery. This document further appears to be an excerpt of a larger document.

DATED: July 8, 2018

/s/ Edward Geist

OF COUNSEL:

John M. Desmarais
Karim Z. Oussayef
Laurie Stempler
Edward Geist
Robert C. Harrits
Brian D. Matty
Michael Matulewicz-Crowley
DESMARAIS LLP
230 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10169
Tel: (212) 351-3400

David E. Moore (#3983)
Bindu A. Palapura (#5370)
POTTER ANDERSON & CORROON LLP
Hercules Plaza, 6th Floor
1313 N. Market Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
Tel: (302) 984-6000
dmoore@potteranderson.com
bpalapura@potteranderson.com

*Attorneys for Plaintiff
International Business Machines Corporation*